TEI Lite: Encoding for Interchange: an introduction to the TEI — Revised for TEI P5 release

Lou Burnard and C. M. Sperberg-McQueen

February 2006

1 Prefatory note

TEI Lite was the name adopted for what the TEI editors originally conceived of as a simple demonstration of how the TEI encoding scheme might be adopted to meet 90% of the needs of 90% of the TEI user community. In retrospect, it was predictable that many people should imagine TEI Lite to be all there is to TEI, or find TEI Lite to be far too heavy for their needs.

The original TEI Lite was based largely on observations of existing and previous practice in the encoding of texts, particularly as manifest in the collections of the Oxford Text Archive and in our own experience. It is therefore unsurprising that it seems to have become, if not a de facto standard, at least a common point of departure for electronic text centres and encoding projects world wide. Maybe the fact that we actually produced this shortish, readable, manual for it also helped.

Early adopters of TEI Lite included a number of "Electronic Text Centers", many of whom produced their own documentation and tutorial materials (some examples are listed in the TEI Tutorials pages). It was also widely adopted as the basis for TEI-conformant authoring systems. Documentation introducing TEI Lite has been widely used for tutorial purposes and has been widely translated (see further the list of versions at `http://www.tei-c.org/Lite/`).

With the publication of TEI P4, the XML version of the TEI Guidelines, which uses the generation of TEI Lite as an example of the modification mechanism built into the TEI Guidelines, the opportunity was taken to produce a lightly revised XML-conformant version, but the present revision is the first substantively changed version since its first appearance in 1997. This revision takes advantage of the many new features introduced into the TEI Guidelines at release P5. A brief list of those changes likely to affect users of previous versions of this document is given below (*Appendix A Substantive changes from the P4 version*).

Lou Burnard, February 2006

This document provides an introduction to the recommendations of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI), by describing a specific subset of the full TEI encoding scheme. The scheme documented here can be used to encode a wide variety of commonly encountered textual features, in such a way as to maximize the usability of electronic transcriptions and to facilitate their interchange among scholars using different computer systems. It is fully compatible with the full TEI scheme, as defined by TEI document P5, *Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange*, as of February 2006, and available from the TEI Consortium website at `http://www.tei-c.org`.

1 Introduction

The Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines are addressed to anyone who wants to interchange information stored in an electronic form. They emphasize the interchange of textual information, but other forms of information such as images and sound are also addressed. The Guidelines are equally applicable in the creation of new resources and in the interchange of existing ones.

The Guidelines provide a means of making explicit certain features of a text in such a way as to aid the processing of that text by computer programs running on different machines. This process of making explicit we call *markup* or *encoding*. Any textual representation on a computer uses some form of markup; the TEI came into being partly because of the enormous variety of mutually incomprehensible encoding schemes currently besetting scholarship, and partly because of the expanding range of scholarly uses now being identified for texts in electronic form.

The TEI Guidelines describe an encoding scheme which can be expressed using a number of different formal languages. The first editions of the Guidelines used the *Standard Generalized Markup Language* (SGML); since 2002, this has been replaced by the use of the Extensible Markup Language (XML). These markup languages have in common the definition of text in terms of *elements* and *attributes*, and rules governing their appearance within a text. The TEI's use of XML is ambitious in its complexity and generality, but it is fundamentally no different from that of any other XML markup scheme, and so any general-purpose XML-aware software is able to process TEI-conformant texts.

The TEI was sponsored by the Association for Computers and the Humanities, the Association for Computational Linguistics, and the Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing, and is now maintained and developed by an independent membership consortium, hosted by four major Universities. Funding has been provided in part from the U.S. National Endowment for the Humanities, Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, and the Social Science and Humanities Research Council of Canada. The Guidelines were first published in May 1994, after six years of development involving many hundreds of scholars from different academic disciplines worldwide. During the years that followed, the Guidelines were increasingly influential in the development of the digital library, in the language industries, and even in the development of the World Wide Web itself. The TEI consortium was set up in January 2001, and a year later produced an edition of the Guidelines entirely revised for XML compatibility. In 2004, it set about a major revision of the Guidelines to take full advantage of new schema languages, the first release of which appeared in 2005. This revision of the TEI Lite manual conforms to version 0.3 of this most recent edition of the Guidelines, TEI P5.

At the outset of its work, the overall goals of the TEI were defined by the closing statement of a planning conference held at Vassar College, N.Y., in November, 1987; these “Poughkeepsie Principles” were further elaborated in a series of design documents. The Guidelines, say these design documents, should:

- suffice to represent the textual features needed for research;

- be simple, clear, and concrete;
- be easy for researchers to use without special-purpose software;
- allow the rigorous definition and efficient processing of texts;
- provide for user-defined extensions;
- conform to existing and emergent standards.

The world of scholarship is large and diverse. For the Guidelines to have wide acceptability, it was important to ensure that:

1. the common core of textual features be easily shared;
2. additional specialist features be easy to add to (or remove from) a text;
3. multiple parallel encodings of the same feature should be possible;
4. the richness of markup should be user-defined, with a very small minimal requirement;
5. adequate documentation of the text and its encoding should be provided.

The present document describes a manageable selection from the extensive set of elements and recommendations resulting from those design goals, which is called *TEI Lite*.

In selecting from the several hundred elements defined by the full TEI scheme, we have tried to identify a useful "starter set", comprising the elements which almost every user should know about. Experience working with TEI Lite will be invaluable in understanding the full TEI scheme and in knowing how to integrate specialized parts of it into the general TEI framework.

Our goals in defining this subset may be summarized as follows:

- it should be able to handle adequately a reasonably wide variety of texts, at the level of detail found in existing practice (as demonstrated in, for example, the holdings of the Oxford Text Archive);
- it should be useful for the production of new documents (such as this one) as well as the encoding of existing texts;
- it should be usable with a wide range of existing XML software;
- it should be derivable from the full TEI scheme using the extension mechanisms described in the TEI Guidelines;
- it should be as small and simple as is consistent with the other goals.

The reader may judge our success in meeting these goals for him or herself. At the time of first writing (1995), our confidence that we have at least partially done so is borne out by its use in practice for the encoding of real texts. The Oxford Text Archive uses TEI Lite when it translates texts from its holdings from their original markup schemes into SGML; the Electronic Text Centers at the University of Virginia and the University of Michigan have used TEI Lite to encode their holdings. And the Text Encoding Initiative itself uses TEI Lite, in its current technical documentation — including this document.

Although we have tried to make this document self-contained, as suits a tutorial text, the reader should be aware that it does not cover every detail of the TEI encoding scheme. All of the elements described here are fully documented in the TEI Guidelines themselves, which should be consulted for authoritative reference information on these, and on the many others which are not described here. Some basic knowledge of XML is assumed.

2 A Short Example

We begin with a short example, intended to show what happens when a passage of prose is typed into a computer by someone with little sense of the purpose of mark-up, or the potential of electronic texts. In an ideal world, such output might be generated by a very accurate optical scanner. It attempts to be faithful to the appearance of the printed text, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings and page breaks, and so forth. Where characters not available on the keyboard are needed (such as the accented letter *a* in *faàl* or the long dash), it attempts to mimic their appearance.

```
CHAPTER 38
READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the par-
son and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I
went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking
the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --
'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The
housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic
order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a
remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having
one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned
by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did
stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens
roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,
and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the
polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only --
'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'
A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master,
but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she
basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to
ear.
'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Ed-
ward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he
was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian
name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he
would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I
wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.
'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary
this.'
I put into his hand a five-pound note.  Without waiting to hear
more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time
after, I caught the words --
'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And
again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and varry
good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see
that.'
I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what
I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and
474
JANE EYRE                      475
Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she
would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see me.
'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I
read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-
moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your
grave or mine.'
How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered
the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote
to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or allud-
ing to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious,
kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspond-
```

```
ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
live without God in the world, and only mind earthly
things.
```

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to disentangle them;
- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to know exactly which passages are in direct speech;
- the preservation of the copy text's hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find the broken words;
- the accented letter in *faàl* and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to print the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded using the TEI Guidelines. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly.
- Apostrophes are distinguished from quotation marks; direct speech is explicitly marked.
- The accented letter and the long dash are correctly represented.
- Page divisions have been marked with an empty <pb> element alone.
- The lineation of the original has not been retained and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.

```
<pb  n="474"/>
<div  type="chapter"  n="38">
  <p>Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I,
     the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back
     from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house,
     where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the
     knives, and I said —</p>
  <p>
    <q>Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this
        morning.</q> The housekeeper and her husband were of that
     decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any
     time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without
     incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some
     shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of
     wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at
     me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens
```

```
    roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang
    suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's
    knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary,
    bending again over the roast, said only —</p>
  <p>
    <q>Have you, miss? Well, for sure!</q>
  </p>
  <p>A short time after she pursued, <q>I seed you go out with
        the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be
        wed</q>; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him,
    was grinning from ear to ear. <q>I telled Mary how it would
        be,</q> he said: <q>I knew what Mr Edward</q> (John was an
    old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet
    of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian
    name) — <q>I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was
        certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right,
        for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!</q> and he politely
    pulled his forelock.</p>
  <p>
    <q>Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and
        Mary this.</q>
  </p>
  <p>I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting
    to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of
    that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —</p>
  <p>
    <q>She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand
        ladies.</q> And again, <q>If she ben't one o' th'
        handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured;
        and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see
        that.</q>
  </p>
  <p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to
    say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus
    acted. Diana and <pb  n="475"/> Mary approved the step
    unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me
    time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and
    see me.</p>
  <p>
    <q>She had better not wait till then, Jane,</q> said Mr
    Rochester, when I read her letter to him; <q>if she does,
        she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life
        long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.</q>
  </p>
  <p>How St John received the news I don't know: he never
    answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six
    months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr
    Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was
    then calm, and though very serious, kind. He has maintained
    a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever
    since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
    live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.</p>
</div>
```

This particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. The decision to focus on Brontë's text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, is an instance of the fundamental *selectivity* of any encoding. An encoding makes explicit only those textual features of importance to the encoder. It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;

- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- detailed bibliographic information about the text's provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;
- the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
- systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
- passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

A TEI-recommended way of carrying out most of these is described in the remainder of this document. The TEI scheme as a whole also provides for an enormous range of other possibilities, of which we cite only a few:

- detailed analysis of the components of names;
- detailed meta-information providing thesaurus-style information about the text's origins or topics;
- information about the printing history or manuscript variations exhibited by a particular series of versions of the text.

For recommendations on these and many other possibilities, the full Guidelines should be consulted.

3 The Structure of a TEI Text

All TEI-conformant texts contain (a) a *TEI header* (marked up as a <teiHeader> element) and (b) the transcription of the text proper (marked up as a <text> element). These two elements are combined together to form a single <TEI> element.

The TEI header provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of a printed text. It has up to four parts: a bibliographic description of the machine-readable text, a description of the way it has been encoded, a non-bibliographic description of the text (a *text profile*), and a revision history. The header is described in more detail in section *19. The Electronic Title Page*.

A TEI text may be *unitary* (a single work) or *composite* (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have an optional *front* or *back*. In between is the *body* of the text, which, in the case of a composite text, may consist of *group*s, each containing more groups or texts.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
```

```
<!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
   </front>
   <body>
<!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
   </body>
   <back>
<!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
   </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

A composite text also has an optional front and back. In between occur one or more groups of texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. A composite text will thus be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!--[ header information for the composite ]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
<!--[ front matter for the composite ]-->
    </front>
    <group>
      <text>
        <front>
<!--[ front matter of first text ]-->
        </front>
        <body>
<!--[ body of first text ]-->
        </body>
        <back>
<!--[ back matter of first text ]-->
        </back>
      </text>
      <text>
        <front>
<!--[ front matter of second text]-->
        </front>
        <body>
<!--[ body of second text ]-->
        </body>
        <back>
<!--[ back matter of second text ]-->
        </back>
      </text>
<!--[ more texts or groups of texts here ]-->
    </group>
    <back>
<!--[ back matter for the composite ]-->
    </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

It is also possible to define a composite of TEI texts, each with its own header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and may itself have a header:

```
<teiCorpus>
  <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for the corpus]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for first text]-->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
<!--[first text in corpus]-->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for second text]-->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
<!--[second text in corpus]-->
    </text>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

It is not however possible to create a composite of corpora -- that is, a number of <teiCorpus> elements combined together and treated as a single object. This is a restriction of the current version of the TEI Guidelines.

In the remainder of this document, we discuss chiefly simple text structures. The discussion in each case consists of a short list of relevant TEI *elements* with a brief definition of each, followed by definitions for any *attributes* specific to that element, and a reference to any *classes* of which the element is a member. These references are linked to full specifications for each object, as given in the TEI *Guidelines*. In most cases, short examples are also given.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element.

<teiHeader> (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

4 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a simple TEI document at the textual level consists of the following elements:

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section *18. Front and Back Matter*. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text.

4.1 Text Division Elements

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs, or these paragraphs may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. Each paragraph is tagged using the <p> tag. The element is used to represent any such grouping of paragraphs.

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

** ** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

The **type** attribute on the element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division, or otherwise distinguish them. Typical values might be "book", "chapter", "section", "part", "poem", "song", etc. For a given project, it will usually be advisable to define and adhere to a specific list of such values.

A element may itself contain further, nested, s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

The **xml:id** attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section *8. Cross References and Links*. It is often useful to provide an **xml:id** attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below.

The **n** attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for the division. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the **n** attribute is the place to record it.

The **xml:lang** attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section *6.3. Foreign Words or Expressions* below.

The **rend** attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section *6. Marking Highlighted Phrases* below. As with the **type** attribute, a project will often find it useful to predefine the possible values for this attribute, but TEI Lite does not constrain it in anyway.

These four attributes, **xml:id**, **n**, **xml:lang**, and **rend** are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are *global attributes*. Other global attributes defined in the TEI Lite scheme are discussed in section *8.3. Special kinds of Linking*.

The value of every **xml:id** attribute should be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring that this is so is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith's *Wealth of Nations* as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define **xml:id** values for this structure as follows:

```
<body>
  <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
    <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
<!-- ... -->
    <div xml:id="WN110" n="I.10" type="chapter">
      <div xml:id="WN1101" n="I.10.1" type="part">
<!-- ... -->
```

```
     </div>
     <div xml:id="WN1102" n="I.10.2" type="part">
<!-- ... -->
     </div>
   </div>
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
</body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for **xml:id** and **n** attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```
<body>
  <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="Volume">
    <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="Chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="TS012" n="2">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS02" n="2" type="Volume">
    <div xml:id="TS021" n="3" type="Chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="TS022" n="4">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
</body>
```

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the **xml:id** values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

4.2 Headings and Closings

Every may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a closing such as "End of Chapter 1". The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be necessary at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section *18.1.2. Prefatory Matter*.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example "Chapter 1") or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g.), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy's *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```
<div xml:id="UGT1" n="Winter" type="Part">
  <div xml:id="UGT11" n="1" type="Chapter">
    <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
    <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ...
    </p>
  </div>
</div>
```

4.3 Prose, Verse and Drama

As noted above, the paragraphs making up a textual division should be tagged with the <p> tag. For example:

```
<p>I fully appreciate Gen. Pope's splendid achievements
with their invaluable results; but you must know that
Major Generalships in the Regular Army, are not as
plenty as blackberries.
</p>
```

A number of different tags are provided for the encoding of the structural components of verse and performance texts (drama, film, etc.):

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

<lg> (line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

<sp> (speech) An individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

<speaker> A specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```
<lg n="I">
  <l>I Sing the progresse of a
    deathlesse soule,</l>
  <l>Whom Fate, with God made,
    but doth not controule,</l>
  <l>Plac'd in most shapes; all times
    before the law</l>
  <l>Yoak'd us, and when, and since,
    in this I sing.</l>
  <l>And the great world to his aged evening;</l>
  <l>From infant morne, through manly noone I draw.</l>
  <l>What the gold Chaldee, of silver Persian saw,</l>
  <l>Greeke brass, or Roman iron, is in this one;</l>
  <l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and stone,</l>
  <l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</l>
</lg>
```

Note that the <l> element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: the original lineation of the first few lines above has not therefore been made explicit by this encoding, and may be lost. The <lb> element described in section *5. Page and Line Numbers* may be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

Sometimes, particularly in dramatic texts, verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the **part** attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete, as in this example:

```
<div type="Act" n="I">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div type="Scene" n="1">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stage rend="italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several
doors</stage>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold
            yourself.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="F">He.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>You come most carefully upon
            your hour.</l>
    </sp>
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>
```

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```
<div>
  <sp>
    <speaker>First voice</speaker>
    <lg type="stanza" part="I">
      <l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
      <l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
    </lg>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Second Voice</speaker>
    <lg part="F">
      <l>The air is cut away before.</l>
      <l>And closes from behind.</l>
    </lg>
  </sp>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

This example shows how dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama should be encoded. It also demonstrates the use of the **who** attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```
<div>
  <sp  who="OPI">
    <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
    <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
  </sp>
  <sp  who="GRM">
    <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
    <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
  </sp>
  <sp  who="OPI">
    <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
    <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him.
        In the first place....</p>
    <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by
        the hour: but for the present I will forbear.</p>
  </sp>
</div>
```

5 Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks may be marked with the following empty elements.

<pb/> (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

<lb/> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

<milestone/> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

These elements mark a single point in the text, not a span of text. The global **n** attribute should be used to supply the number of the page or line beginning at the tag.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, if only to simplify later proof-reading. Recording the line breaks may be useful for the same reason; treatment of end-of-line hyphenation in printed source texts will require some consideration.

If pagination, etc., are marked for more than one edition, specify the edition in question using the **ed** attribute, and supply as many tags are necessary. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (**ED1** and **ED2**)

```
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to
say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus
acted. Diana and <pb  ed="ED1"  n="475"/> Mary approved the
step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would
<pb  ed="ED2"  n="485"/>just give me time to get over the
honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</p>
```

The <pb> and <lb> elements are special cases of the general class of *milestone* elements which mark reference points within a text. TEI Lite also includes a generic <milestone> element, which is not restricted to special cases but can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, or in general any significant change in the text not marked by an XML element. The names used for types of unit and for editions referred to by the **ed** and **unit** attributes may be chosen freely, but should

be documented in the header. The <milestone> element may be used to replace the others, or the others may be used as a set; they should not be mixed arbitrarily.

6 Marking Highlighted Phrases

6.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader's attention to some associated change.

The global **rend** attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged <head rend="bold">, and one in italic <head rend="italic">.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element <hi> may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status.

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

```
<p>
  <hi  rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi  rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
</p>
```

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

<label> contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

Some features (notably quotations and glosses) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the elements <q> and <gloss> (as discussed in the following section) should be used. If the rendition is to be recorded, use the global **rend** attribute.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence:

> On the one hand the *Nibelungenlied* is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *romans d'antiquité*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.

Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might look like this:

```
<p>On the one hand the <title>Nibelungenlied</title> is associated
with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the
<foreign>romans d'antiquité</foreign>, the romances of
Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might look like this:

```
<p>On the one hand the <hi  rend="italic">Nibelungenlied</hi>
is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century
France, the <hi  rend="italic">romans
    d'antiquité</hi>, the romances of
Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

6.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation. When possible, we recommend that the underlying feature be tagged, rather than the simple fact that quotation marks appear in the text, using the following elements:

<q> (separated from the surrounding text with quotation marks) contains material which is marked as (ostensibly) being somehow different than the surrounding text, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to forget
Dr. Johnson's description of the
lexicographer as <q>a harmless drudge.</q>
</p>
```

To record how a quotation was printed (for example, *in-line* or set off as a *display* or *block quotation*), the **rend** attribute should be used. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the quotation and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```
<p>
  <q>Who-e debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q>you
    no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted
tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
</p>
```

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes **next** and **prev** may be used, as described in section *8.3. Special kinds of Linking*.

Quotations may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the **who** attribute, whether or not the source is given in the text, as in the following example:

```
<q  who="Wilson">Spaulding, he came down into the office just this
day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand, and he
says:—<q  who="Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that
    I was a red-headed man.</q>
</q>
```

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the **rend** attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

As with highlighting, it is not always possible and may not be considered desirable to interpret the function of quotation marks in a text in this way. In such cases, the tag <hi rend="quoted"> might be used to mark quoted text without making any claim as to its status.

6.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words or phrases which are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. If the word or phrase is already tagged for some reason, the element indicated should bear a value for the global **xml:lang** attribute indicating the language used. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the **xml:lang** attribute. For example:

```
<p>John has real
<foreign  xml:lang="fra">savoir-faire</foreign>.</p>
<p>Have you read <title  xml:lang="deu">Die Dreigroschenoper</title>?</p>
<p>
  <mentioned  xml:lang="fra">Savoir-faire</mentioned> is French for
know-how.
</p>
<p>The court issued a writ of <term  xml:lang="lat">mandamus</term>.</p>
```

As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>, <mentioned>, or <term> applies. The global **xml:lang** attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text.

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the **xml:lang** attribute, must be constructed in a particular way, and must conform to common Internet standards[1], as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

zh or zho	Chinese	grc	Ancient Greek
en	English	ell or el	Greek
enm	Middle English	ja or jpn	Japanese
fr or fra	French	la or lat	Latin
de or deu	German	sa or san	Sanskrit

[1]The relevant standards are RFC 3066, and the lists of two and three language identifiers maintained as part of ISO 639 (see http://www.w3.org/WAI/ER/IG/ert/iso639.htm)

7 Notes

All notes, whether printed as footnotes, endnotes, marginalia, or elsewhere, should be marked using the same element:

<note> contains a note or annotation.

Where possible, the body of a note should be inserted in the text at the point at which its identifier or mark first appears. This may not be possible for example with marginalia, which may not be anchored to an exact location. For simplicity, it may be adequate to position marginal notes before the relevant paragraph or other element. Notes may also be placed in a separate division of the text (as end-notes are, in printed books) and linked to the relevant portion of the text using their **target** attribute.

The **n** attribute may be used to supply the number or identifier of a note if this is required. The **resp** attribute should be used consistently to distinguish between authorial and editorial notes, if the work has both kinds; otherwise, the TEI header should state which kind they are.

Examples:

```
<p>Collections are ensembles of distinct
entities or objects of any sort.
<note  place="foot"  n="1">We explain below why we use the uncommon term
  <mentioned>collection</mentioned>
     instead of the expected <mentioned>set</mentioned>.
     Our usage corresponds to the <mentioned>aggregate</mentioned>
     of many mathematical writings and to the sense of
  <mentioned>class</mentioned> found
     in older logical writings.
  </note>
The elements ...</p>
```

```
<lg  xml:id="RAM609">
  <note  place="margin">The curse is finally expiated</note>
  <l>And now this spell was snapt: once more</l>
  <l>I viewed the ocean green,</l>
  <l>And looked far forth, yet little saw</l>
  <l>Of what had else been seen —</l>
</lg>
```

8 Cross References and Links

Explicit cross references or links from one point in a text to another in the same or another document may be encoded using the elements described in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section *8.3. Special kinds of Linking*.

8.1 Simple Cross References

A cross reference from one point within a single document to another can be encoded using either of the following elements:

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

<ptr/> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

The difference between these two elements is that <ptr> is an empty element, simply marking a point from which a link is to be made, whereas <ref> may contain some text as well — typically the text of the cross-reference itself. The <ptr> element would be used for a cross reference

which is to be indicated by some non-verbal means such as a symbol or icon, or in an electronic text by a button. It is also useful in document production systems, where the formatter can generate the correct verbal form of the cross reference.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent (assuming we have documented somewhere the exact verbal form of cross references represented by <ptr> elements):

```
See especially <ref  target="#SEC12">section 12 on page
34</ref>.
```

```
See especially <ptr  target="#SEC12"/>.
```

The value of the **target** attribute must have been used as the identifier of some other element within the current document. This implies that the passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, and must therefore be tagged as an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a element:

```
 ...
see especially <ptr  target="#SEC12"/>.
...

<div  xml:id="SEC12">
  <head>Concerning Identifiers</head>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

Because the **xml:id** attribute is global, any element in a document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:

```
 ...
this is discussed in <ref  target="#pspec">the paragraph on links</ref>
...

<p  xml:id="pspec">Links may be made to any kind of element
...</p>
```

Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an <anchor> element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the <seg> element may be introduced to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the "chunk" level.

In the following (imaginary) example, <ref> elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

```
 Returning to <ref  target="#ABCD">the point where I dozed
off</ref>, I noticed that <ref  target="#EFGH">three
words</ref> had been circled in red by a previous reader
```

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (**ABCD** and **EFGH** in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the <anchor> and <seg> elements may be used:

```
 .... <anchor  type="bookmark"  xml:id="ABCD"/> ....
....<seg  type="target"  xml:id="EFGH"> ... </seg> ...
```

The **type** attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section *8.3. Special kinds of Linking* below.

8.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the elements <ptr> and <ref> may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. However, the same elements may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the **target** attribute may be any valid *universal resource indicator* (URI). A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar "URL" used to indicate a web page, such as `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`.

A URL may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2`. The sharp sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an **xml:id** attribute value of **SEC2** within the document retrieved from `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

Within a URL, parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms, using a special language called Xpath, also defined by the W3C. This is particularly useful where the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers and must therefore be located by some other means. A full specification of the language is well beyond the scope of this document; here we provide only a flavour of its power.

In the XPath language, locations are defined as a series of *steps*, each one identifying some part of the document, often in terms of the locations identified by the previous step. For example, you would point to the third sentence of the second paragraph of chapter two by selecting chapter two in the first step, the second paragraph in the second step, and the third sentence in the last step. A step can be defined in terms of the document tree itself, using such concepts as **parent**, **descendent**, **preceding**, etc. or, more loosely, in terms of text patterns, word or character positions.

8.3 Special kinds of Linking

The following special purpose *linking* attributes are defined for every element in the TEI Lite scheme:

ana links an element with its interpretation.

corresp links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

next links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

prev links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The **ana** (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section *15. Interpretation and Analysis*. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence "John loves Nancy" might be encoded as follows:

```
<seg type="sentence" ana="SVO">
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers **SVO**, **NP1**, and **VV1** where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the <seg> element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the **type** attribute.

The **corresp** (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example

```
<seg xml:lang="fra" xml:id="FR1" corresp="#EN1">Jean aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1" corresp="#FR1">John loves Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent anaphoric correspondences between "the show" and "Shirley", and between "NBC" and "the network":

```
<p>
  <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>, which made
its Friday night debut only a month ago, was
not listed on <name xml:id="nbc">NBC</name>'s new schedule,
although <seg xml:id="network" corresp="#nbc">the network</seg>
says <seg xml:id="show" corresp="#shirley">the show</seg>
still is being considered.
</p>
```

The **next** and **prev** attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```
<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who-e debel you?</q>
— he at last said — <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e,
damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying,
the lighted tomahawk began flourishing
about me in the dark.
```

9 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

9.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark *correction*, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

<sic> (latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark *normalization*, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

As an example, consider this extract from the quarto printing of Shakespeare's *Henry V*.

```
... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and a table of green
feelds
```

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalise) the Elizabethan spellings of *a'* and *feelds* for *he* and *fields* respectively. He or she might also want to emend *table* to *babbl'd*, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakesperean scholar Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

```
... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and <reg>he</reg>
<corr  resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr> of green

<reg>fields</reg>
```

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

```
... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and <orig>a</orig>
<sic>table</sic> of green

<orig>feelds</orig>
```

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the <choice> element.

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

This allows an editor to mark where alternative readings are possible:

```
... for his nose was
as sharp as a pen and
<choice>
  <orig>a</orig>
  <reg>he</reg>
</choice>
<choice>
  <corr  resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr>
```

```
  <sic>table</sic>
</choice>
of green

<choice>
  <orig>feelds</orig>
  <reg>fields</reg>
</choice>
```

9.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read

```
  The following elements are provided for for simple editorial
  interventions.
```

then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second *for*, thus:

```
The following elements are provided for
<del  resp="#LB">for</del> simple editorial interventions.
```

The attribute value LB on the **resp** attribute indicates that "LB" corrected the duplication of *for*.

If the source read

```
  The following elements provided for
  simple editorial interventions.
```

(i.e. if the verb had been inadvertently dropped) then the corrected text might read:

```
The following elements <add  resp="#LB">are</add> provided for
simple editorial interventions.
```

These elements are not limited to changes made by an editor; they can also be used to record authorial changes in manuscripts. A manuscript in which the author has first written "How it galls me, what a galling shadow", then crossed out the word *galls* and inserted *dogs* might be encoded thus:

```
How it <del hand="DHL" type="overstrike">galls</del>
<add hand="DHL" place="supralinear">dogs</add> me,
what a galling shadow
```

Similarly, the <unclear> and <gap> elements may be used together to indicate the omission of illegible material; the following example also shows the use of <add> for a conjectural emendation:

```
One hundred & twenty good regulars joined to me
<unclear>
  <gap reason="indecipherable"/>
</unclear>
& instantly, would aid me signally <add hand="ed">in?</add>
an enterprise against Wilmington.
```

The <del> element marks material which is transcribed as part of the electronic text despite being marked as deleted, while <gap> marks the location of material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages:

```
<p> ... An example of a list appearing in a fief ledger of
<name type="place">Koldinghus</name>
  <date>1611/12</date>
is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of
honey.</p>
<gap>
  <desc>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</desc>
</gap>
<p>A description of the overall structure of the account is
once again ... </p>
```

Other corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) systematically omit figures and mathematics:

```
<p>At the bottom of your screen below the mode line is the
<term>minibuffer</term>. This is the area where Emacs
echoes the commands you enter and where you specify
filenames for Emacs to find, values for search and replace,
and so on.
<gap reason="graphic">
   <desc>diagram of Emacs screen</desc>
  </gap>
</p>
```

9.3 Abbreviations and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The <abbr> element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

```
We can sum up the above discussion as follows: the identity of a
<abbr>CC</abbr> is defined by that calibration of values which
motivates the elements of its <abbr>GSP</abbr>;
```

```
Every manufacturer of <abbr>3GL</abbr> or <abbr>4GL</abbr>
languages is currently nailing on <abbr>OOP</abbr> extensions
```

The **type** attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The <expan> element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word **per** is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

```
<expan>per</expan>
```

The expansion corresponding with an abbreviated form may not always contain the same letters as the abbreviation. Where it does, however, common editorial practice is to italicize or otherwise signal which letters have been supplied. The <expan> element should not be used for this purpose since its function is to indicate an expanded form, not a part of one. For example, consider the common abbreviation **wt** (for **with**) found in medieval texts. In a modern edition, an editor might wish to represent this as "w**i**t**h**", italicising the letters not found in the source. An appropriate encoding for this purpose would be

```
<expan>w<hi>i</hi>t<hi>h</hi>
</expan>
```

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the <choice> element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```
<choice>
  <abbr>wt</abbr>
  <expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```

10 Names, Dates, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of "data-like" features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, numbers and dates. They also pose particular problems for many natural language processing (NLP) applications because of the variety of ways in which they may be presented within a text. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

10.1 Names and Referring Strings

A *referring string* is a phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The **type** attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```
<q>My dear <rs  type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said his lady to him one day,
<q>have you heard
that <rs  type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let
at last?</q>
```

```
It being one of the principles of the
<rs  type="organization">Circumlocution Office</rs> never,
on any account whatsoever, to give a straightforward answer,
<rs  type="person">Mr Barnacle</rs> said,
<q>Possibly.</q>
```

As the following example shows, the <rs> element may be used for any reference to a person, place, etc, not necessarily one in the form of a proper noun or noun phrase.

```
<q>My dear <rs  type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>,</q>
said <rs  type="person">his lady</rs> to him
one day...
```

The <name> element by contrast is provided for the special case of referencing strings which consist only of proper nouns; it may be used synonymously with the <rs> element, or nested within it if a referring string contains a mixture of common and proper nouns.

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as *van* or *de la*, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The **key** attribute provides an alternative normalized identifier for the object being named, like a database record key. It may thus be useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```
<q>My dear <rs  type="person"  key="BENM1">Mr. Bennet</rs>,
</q> said <rs  type="person"  key="BENM2">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that
<rs  type="place"  key="NETP1">Netherfield Park</rs>
is let at last?</q>
```

This use should be distinguished from the case of the <reg> (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```
<name  type="person"  key="WADLM1">
  <choice>
    <sic>Walter de la Mare</sic>
    <reg>de la Mare, Walter</reg>
  </choice>
</name> was born at
<name  key="Ch1"  type="place">Charlton</name>, in
<name  key="KT1"  type="county">Kent</name>, in 1873.
```

The <index> element discussed in indexing may be more appropriate if the function of the regularization is to provide a consistent index:

```
<p>
  <name  type="place">Montaillou</name> is not a large parish.
At the time of the events which led to
<name  type="person">Fournier</name>'s <index>
    <term>Benedict XII, Pope of Avignon (Jacques Fournier)</term>
  </index>
investigations, the local population consisted of between 200 and 250 inhabitants.
</p>
```

Although adequate for many simple applications, these methods have two inconveniences: if the name occurs many times, then its regularised form must be repeated many times; and the burden of additional XML markup in the body of the text may be inconvenient to maintain and complex to process. For applications such as onomastics, relating to persons or places named rather than the name itself, or wherever a detailed analysis of the component parts of a name is needed, the full TEI Guidelines provide a range of other solutions.

10.2 Dates and Times

Tags for the more detailed encoding of times and dates include the following:

<date> contains a date in any format.

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

The **value** attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. “1990”, “September 1990”, “twelvish”) can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```
<date  when="1980-02-21">21 Feb 1980</date>
<date  when="1990">1990</date>
<date  when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
<date  when="--09">September</date>
<date  when="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept 11th, 12 minutes before 9 am</date>
```

Note in the last example the use of a normalized representation for the date string which includes a time: this example could thus equally well be tagged using the <time> element.

```
Given on the <date  when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June
in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and
Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first
and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

```
<l>specially when it's nine below zero</l>
<l>and <time  when="15:00:00">three o'clock in the
    afternoon</time>
</l>
```

10.3 Numbers

Numbers can be written with either letters or digits (`twenty-one`, `xxi`, and `21`) and their presentation is language-dependent (e.g. English *5th* becomes Greek *5.*; English *123,456.78* equals French *123.456,78*). In natural-language processing or machine-translation applications, it is often helpful to distinguish them from other, more "lexical" parts of the text. In other applications, the ability to record a number's value in standard notation is important. The <num> element provides this possibility:

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form.

For example:

```
<num  value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num  type="cardinal"  value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num  type="percentage"  value="10">ten percent</num>
<num  type="percentage"  value="10">10%</num>
<num  type="ordinal"  value="5">5th</num>
```

11 Lists

The element <list> is used to mark any kind of *list*. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be ordered, unordered, or a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

<item> contains one component of a list.

<label> contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

Individual list items are tagged with <item>. The first <item> may optionally be preceded by a <head>, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of a list may be omitted, indicated using the **n** attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the <label> element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item  n="1">First item in list.</item>
  <item  n="2">Second item in list.</item>
  <item  n="3">Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <label>1</label>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <label>2</label>
```

```
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <label>3</label>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a *glossary list*, tagged <list type="gloss">. Here, each item comprises a *term* and a *gloss*, marked with <label> and <item> respectively. These correspond to the elements <term> and <gloss>, which can occur anywhere in prose text.

```
<list  type="gloss">
  <head>Vocabulary</head>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">nu</label>
  <item>now</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">lhude</label>
  <item>loudly</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">bloweth</label>
  <item>blooms</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">med</label>
  <item>meadow</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">wude</label>
  <item>wood</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">awe</label>
  <item>ewe</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">lhouth</label>
  <item>lows</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">sterteth</label>
  <item>bounds, frisks</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">verteth</label>
  <item  xml:lang="lat">pedit</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">murie</label>
  <item>merrily</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">swik</label>
  <item>cease</item>
  <label  xml:lang="enm">naver</label>
  <item>never</item>
</list>
```

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a *table*, for which special-purpose tagging is defined below (*13. Tables*).

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```
<list  type="gloss">
  <label>EVIL</label>
  <item>
    <list  type="simple">
      <item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void
            of all hope of recovery.</item>
      <item>I am singled out and separated as it were from
            all the world to be miserable.</item>
      <item>I am divided from mankind – a solitaire; one
            banished from human society.</item>
    </list>
  </item>
  <label>GOOD</label>
```

```
  <item>
    <list  type="simple">
      <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my
            ship's company were.</item>
      <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's
            crew, to be spared from death...</item>
      <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place,
            affording no sustenances....</item>
    </list>
  </item>
</list>
```

A list need not necessarily be displayed in list format. For example,

```
<p>On those remote pages it is written that animals are
divided into <list  rend="run-on">
   <item  n="a">those that belong to the
       Emperor,</item>
   <item  n="b"> embalmed ones, </item>
   <item  n="c"> those
       that are trained, </item>
   <item  n="d"> suckling pigs, </item>
   <item  n="e">mermaids, </item>
   <item  n="f"> fabulous ones, </item>
   <item  n="g"> stray
       dogs, </item>
   <item  n="h"> those that are included in this
       classification, </item>
   <item  n="i"> those that tremble as if they
       were mad, </item>
   <item  n="j"> innumerable ones, </item>
   <item  n="k"> those
       drawn with a very fine camel's-hair brush, </item>
   <item  n="l">others, </item>
   <item  n="m"> those that have just broken a flower
       vase, </item>
   <item  n="n"> those that resemble flies from a
       distance.</item>
  </list>
</p>
```

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the <listBibl> element, described in the next section.

12 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element <bibl> is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to mark at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<biblScope> (scope of citation) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

<date> contains a date in any format.

<editor> secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

For example, the following editorial note might be transcribed as shown:

> He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, *Harvard Studies* 5. 88ff).

```
He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died
March 14, 1470 (according to <bibl>
  <author>Kittredge</author>,
<title>Harvard Studies</title>
  <biblScope>5. 88ff</biblScope>
</bibl>).
```

For lists of bibliographic citations, the <listBibl> element should be used; it may contain a series of <bibl> elements.

13 Tables

Tables represent a challenge for any text processing system, but simple tables, at least, appear in so many texts that even in the simplified TEI tag set presented here, markup for tables is necessary. The following elements are provided for this purpose:

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

<row> contains one row of a table.

<cell> contains one cell of a table.

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the *Journal of the Plague Year* to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

```
<p>It was indeed coming on amain, for the burials that
same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:—
<table  rows="5"  cols="4">
   <row  role="data">
     <cell  role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
     <cell>64</cell>
     <cell>84</cell>
     <cell>119</cell>
   </row>
   <row  role="data">
     <cell  role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
     <cell>65</cell>
     <cell>105</cell>
     <cell>116</cell>
   </row>
   <row  role="data">
     <cell  role="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</cell>
```

```
     <cell>213</cell>
     <cell>421</cell>
     <cell>554</cell>
    </row>
  </table>
</p>
<p>This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel
and unchristian method, and the poor people so confined made
bitter lamentations. ... </p>
```

14 Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, by using the elements described in this section. The same elements may also be used to embed digitized versions of the graphic within an electronic document.

<graphic/> indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure.

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration or figure.

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the <figure> element itself, in a <head> and one or more <p> elements, as may also any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a <figDesc> element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example;

```
<pb  n="412"/>
<graphic  url="p412fig.png"/>
<pb  n="413"/>
```

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file p412fig.png appears between pages 412 and 413.

The <graphic> element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer's ornament as a heading:

```
<head>
  <graphic
     url="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-ral02.gif"/>
</head>
```

More usually, a graphic will have at the least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the <head> element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure. It is also often convenient to include a brief description of the image. The <figure> element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic “block”:

```
<figure>
  <graphic  url="fessipic.png"/>
  <head>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</head>
  <figDesc>A Cruikshank engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading
    a group of revellers.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

When a digitized version of the graphic concerned is available, it may be embedded at the appropriate point within the document in this way.

15 Interpretation and Analysis

It is often said that *all* markup is a form of interpretation or analysis. While it is certainly difficult, and may be impossible, to distinguish firmly between "objective" and "subjective" information in any universal way, it remains true that judgments concerning the latter are typically regarded as more likely to provide controversy than those concerning the former. Many scholars therefore prefer to record such interpretations only if it is possible to alert the reader that they are considered more open to dispute, than the rest of the markup. This section describes some of the elements provided by the TEI scheme to meet this need.

15.1 Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of "canonical reference". To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

As the name suggests, the <s> element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking *orthographic sentences*, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```
<pb  n="474"/>
<div  type="chapter"  n="38">
  <p>
    <s  n="001">Reader, I married him.</s>
    <s  n="002">A quiet wedding we had:</s>
    <s  n="003">he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.</s>
    <s  n="004">When we got back from church, I went
        into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking
        the dinner, and John cleaning the knives,
        and I said —</s>
  </p>
  <p>
    <q>
      <s  n="005">Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester
          this morning.</s>
    </q> ... </p>
</div>
```

Note that <s> elements cannot nest: the beginning of one <s> element implies that the previous one has finished. When s-units are tagged as shown above, it is advisable to tag the entire text end-to-end, so that every word in the text being analysed will be contained by exactly one <s> element, whose identifier can then be used to specify a unique reference for it. If the identifiers

used are unique within the document, then the **xml:id** attribute might be used in preference to the **n** used in the above example.

15.2 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

A more general purpose segmentation element, the <seg> has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see section *8. Cross References and Links*); it identifies some phrase-level portion of text to which the encoder may assign a user-specified **type**, as well as a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the Guidelines provide no "apostrophe" element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the <q> element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the **who** attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the <seg> element as follows:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
    <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg>
     A quiet wedding we had: ...</p>
</div>
```

The **type** attribute on the <seg> element can take any value, and so can be used to record phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the header.

A <seg> element of one type (unlike the <s> element which it superficially resembles) can be nested within a <seg> element of the same or another type. This enables quite complex structures to be represented; some examples were given in section *8.3. Special kinds of Linking* above. However, because it must respect the requirement that elements be properly nested, and may not cut across each other, it cannot cope with the common requirement to associate an interpretation with arbitrary segments of a text which may completely ignore the document hierarchy. It also requires that the interpretation itself be represented by a single coded value in the **type** attribute.

Neither restriction applies to the <interp> element, which provides powerful features for the encoding of quite complex interpretive information in a relatively straightforward manner.

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.

<interpGrp> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

These elements allows the encoder to specify both the class of an interpretation, and the particular instance of that class which the interpretation involves. Thus, whereas with <seg> one can say simply that something is an apostrophe, with <interp> one can say that it is an instance (apostrophe) of a larger class (rhetorical figures).

Moreover, <interp> is an empty element, which must be linked to the passage to which it applies either by means of the **ana** attribute discussed in section *8.3. Special kinds of Linking* above, or by means of its own **inst** attribute. This means that any kind of analysis can be represented, with no need to respect the document hierarchy, and also facilitates the grouping of analyses of a particular type together. A special purpose <interpGrp> element is provided for the latter purpose.

For example, suppose that you wish to mark such diverse aspects of a text as themes or subject matter, rhetorical figures, and the locations of individual scenes of the narrative. Different portions of our sample passage from *Jane Eyre* for example, might be associated with the

rhetorical figures of apostrophe, hyperbole, and metaphor; with subject-matter references to churches, servants, cooking, postal service, and honeymoons; and with scenes located in the church, in the kitchen, and in an unspecified location (drawing room?).

These interpretations could be placed anywhere within the <text> element; it is however good practice to put them all in the same place (e.g. a separate section of the front or back matter), as in the following example:

```
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interp xml:id="fig-apos-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="figureOfSpeech">apostrophe</interp>
      <interp xml:id="fig-hyp-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="figureOfSpeech">hyperbole</interp>
      <interp xml:id="set-church-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="setting">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-church-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-serv-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference">servants</interp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

The evident redundancy of this encoding can be considerably reduced by using the <interpGrp> element to group together all those <interp> elements which share common attribute values, as follows:

```
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interpGrp type="figureOfSpeech" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="fig-apos">apostrophe</interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-hyp">hyperbole</interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-meta">metaphor</interp>
      </interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="scene-setting" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="set-church">church</interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-kitch">kitchen</interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-unspec">unspecified</interp>
      </interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="reference" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="ref-church">church</interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-serv">servants</interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-cook">cooking</interp>
      </interpGrp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

Once these interpretation elements have been defined, they can be linked with the parts of the text to which they apply in either or both of two ways. The **ana** attribute can be used on whichever element is appropriate:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p xml:id="P38.1" ana="#set-church #set-kitch">
    <s xml:id="P38.1.1" ana="#fig-apos">Reader, I married him.</s>
  </p>
</div>
```

Note in this example that since the paragraph has two settings (in the church and in the kitchen), the identifiers of both have been supplied.

Alternatively, the <interp> elements can point to all the parts of the text to which they apply, using their **inst** attribute:

```
<interp
   xml:id="fig-apos-2"
   type="figureOfSpeech"
   resp="#LB-MSM"
   inst="#P38.1.1">apostrophe</interp>
<interp
   xml:id="set-church-2"
   type="scene-setting"
   inst="#P38.1"
   resp="#LB-MSM">church</interp>
<interp
   xml:id="set-kitchen-2"
   type="scene-setting"
   inst="#P38.1"
   resp="#LB-MSM">kitchen</interp>
```

The <interp> is not limited to any particular type of analysis, The literary analysis shown above is but one possibility; one could equally well use <interp> to capture a linguistic part-of-speech analysis. For example, the example sentence given in section *8.3. Special kinds of Linking* assumes a linguistic analysis which might be represented as follows:

```
<interp  xml:id="NP1"  type="pos">noun phrase, singular</interp>
<interp  xml:id="VV1"  type="pos">inflected verb, present-tense singular</interp>
...
```

16 Technical Documentation

Although the focus of this document is on the use of the TEI scheme for the encoding of existing "pre-electronic" documents, the same scheme may also be used for the encoding of new documents. In the preparation of new documents (such as this one), XML has much to recommend it: the document's structure can be clearly represented, and the same electronic text can be re-used for many purposes — to provide both online hypertext or browsable versions and well-formatted typeset versions from a common source for example.

To facilitate this, the TEI Lite schema includes some elements for marking features of technical documents in general, and of XML-related documents in particular.

16.1 Additional Elements for Technical Documents

The following elements may be used to mark particular features of technical documents:

<eg> (example) contains any kind of illustrative example.

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

<ident> (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language.

<gi> (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.

<att> (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula.

<val> (value) contains a single attribute value.

The following example shows how these elements might be used to encode a passage from a tutorial introducing the Fortran programming language:

```
<p>It is traditional to introduce a language with a program like the
following:
<eg> CHAR*12 GRTG
     GRTG = 'HELLO WORLD'
     PRINT *, GRTG
     END
  </eg>
</p>
<p>This simple example first declares a variable <ident>GRTG</ident>, in
the line <code>CHAR*12 GRTG</code>, which identifies <ident>GRTG</ident>
as consisting of 12 bytes of type <ident>CHAR</ident>. To this variable,
the value <val>HELLO WORLD</val>
is then assigned.</p>
```

A formatting application, given a text like that above, can be instructed to format examples appropriately (e.g. to preserve line breaks, or to use a distinctive font). Similarly, the use of tags such as <ident> greatly facilitates the construction of a useful index.

The <formula> element should be used to enclose a mathematical or chemical formula presented within the text as a distinct item. Since formulae generally include a large variety of special typographic features not otherwise present in ordinary text, it will usually be necessary to present the body of the formula in a specialized notation. The notation used should be specified by the **notation** attribute, as in the following example:

```
<formula  notation="tex"> \begin{math}E = mc^{2}\end{math}
</formula>
```

A particular problem arises when XML encoding is the subject of discussion within a technical document, itself encoded in XML. In such a document, it is clearly essential to distinguish clearly the markup occurring within examples from that marking up the document itself, and end-tags are highly likely to occur. One simple solution is to use the predefined entity reference `<` to represent each < character which marks the start of an XML tag within the examples. A more general solution is to mark off the whole body of each example as containing data which is not to be scanned for XML mark-up by the parser. This is achieved by enclosing it within a special XML construct called a *`CDATA` marked section*, as in the following example:

```
  <p>A list should be encoded as follows:
  <eg><![ CDATA [
  <list>
  <item>First item in the list</item>
  <item>Second item</item>
  </list>
  ]]>
  </eg>
  The <gi>list</gi> element consists of a series of <gi>item</gi>
  elements.
```

The <list> element used within the example above will not be regarded as forming part of the document proper, because it is embedded within a marked section (beginning with the special markup declaration **<![CDATA[** , and ending with]]>).

Note also the use of the <gi> element to tag references to element names (or *generic identifiers*) within the body of the text.

16.2 Generated Divisions

Most modern document production systems have the ability to generate automatically whole sections such as a table of contents or an index. The TEI Lite scheme provides an element to mark the location at which such a generated section should be placed.

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

The <divGen> element can be placed anywhere that a division element would be legal, as in the following example:

```
<front>
  <titlePage>
<!-- ... -->
  </titlePage>
  <divGen  type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
</front>
<body>
<!-- ... -->
</body>
<back>
  <div>
    <head>Appendix</head>
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <divGen  type="index"  n="Index"/>
</back>
```

This example also demonstrates the use of the **type** attribute to distinguish the different kinds of division to be generated: in the first case a table of contents (a *toc*) and in the second an index.

When an existing index or table of contents is to be encoded (rather than one being generated) for some reason, the <list> element discussed in section *11. Lists* should be used.

16.3 Index Generation

While production of a table of contents from a properly tagged document is generally unproblematic for an automatic processor, the production of a good quality index will often require more careful tagging. It may not be enough simply to produce a list of all parts tagged in some particular way, although extracting (for example) all occurrences of elements such as <term> or <name> will often be a good departure point for an index.

The TEI schema provides a special purpose <index> tag which may be used to mark both the parts of the document which should be indexed, and how the indexing should be done.

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

For example, the second paragraph of this section might include the following:

```
...
TEI lite also provides a special purpose <gi>index</gi> tag

<index>
  <term>indexing</term>
</index>
```

```
<index>
  <term>index (tag)</term>
  <index>
    <term>use in index generation</term>
  </index>
</index>
which may be used ...
```

The <index> element can also be used to provide a form of interpretive or analytic information. For example, in a study of Ovid, it might be desired to record all the poet's references to different figures, for comparative stylistic study. In the following lines of the *Metamorphoses*, such a study would record the poet's references to Jupiter (as *deus*, *se*, and as the subject of *confiteor* [in inflectional form number 227]), to Jupiter-in-the-guise-of-a-bull (as *imago tauri fallacis* and the subject of *teneo*), and so on.[2]

```
<l  n="3.001">iamque deus posita fallacis imagine tauri</l>
<l  n="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaque rura tenebat</l>
```

This need might be met using the <note> element discussed in section in *7. Notes*, or with the <interp> element discussed in section *15. Interpretation and Analysis*. Here we demonstrate how it might also be satisfied by using the <index> element.

We assume that the object is to generate more than one index: one for names of deities (called **dn**), another for onomastic references (called **on**), a third for pronominal references (called **pr**) and so forth. One way of achieving this might be as follows:

```
<l  n="3.001">iamque deus posita fallacis imagine tauri
<index  indexName="dn">
   <term>Iuppiter</term>
   <index>
     <term>deus</term>
   </index>
  </index>
  <index  indexName="on">
    <term>Iuppiter (taurus)</term>
    <index>
      <term>imago tauri fallacis</term>
    </index>
  </index>
</l>
<l  n="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaque rura tenebat
<index  indexName="pr">
   <term>Iuppiter</term>
   <index>
     <term>se</term>
   </index>
  </index>
  <index  indexName="v">
    <term>Iuppiter</term>
    <index>
      <term>confiteor (v227)</term>
    </index>
  </index>
</l>
```

[2]The analysis is taken, with permission, from Willard McCarty and Burton Wright, *An Analytical Onomasticon to the Metamorphoses of Ovid* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, forthcoming). Some simplifications have been undertaken.

For each <index> element above, an entry will be generated in the appropriate index, using as headword the content of the <term> element it contains; the <term> elements nested within the secondary <index> element in each case provide a secondary keyword. The actual reference will be taken from the context in which the <index> element appears, i.e. in this case the identifier of the <l> element containing it.

16.4 Addresses

The <address> element is used to mark a postal address of any kind. It contains one or more <addrLine> elements, one for each line of the address.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Here is a simple example:

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
  <addrLine>U.S.A.</addrLine>
</address>
```

The individual parts of an address may be further distinguished by using the <name> element discussed above (section *10.1. Names and Referring Strings*).

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <addrLine>
    <name  type="city">Chicago</name>, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
  <addrLine>
    <name  type="country">USA</name>
  </addrLine>
</address>
```

17 Character Sets, Diacritics, etc.

With the advent of XML and its adoption of Unicode as the required character set for all documents, most problems previously associated with the representation of the divers languages and writing systems of the world are greatly reduced. For those working with standard forms of the European languages in particular, almost no special action is needed: any XML editor should enable you to input accented letters or other "non-ASCII" characters directly, and they should be stored in the resulting file in a way which is transferable directly between different systems.

There are two important exceptions: the characters & and < may not be entered directly in an XML document, since they have a special significance as initiating markup. They must always be represented as *entity references*, like this: `&` or `<`. Other characters may also be represented by means of entity reference where necessary, for example to retain compatibility with a pre-Unicode processing system.

18 Front and Back Matter

18.1 Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information.

P5 provides a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

18.1.1 Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element <titlePage>. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start of a section or chapter, or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the **rend** attribute when necessary, as described above. Very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not as yet provided for by the Guidelines. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the **lang** attribute or the <foreign> element, as necessary. Names, wherever they appear, should be tagged using the <name>, as elsewhere.

Two example title pages follow:

```
<titlePage  rend="Roman">
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart  type="main"> PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV <hi>BOOKS</hi>.
    </titlePart>
    <titlePart> To which is added <title>SAMSON AGONISTES</title>.
    </titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline>The Author <docAuthor>JOHN MILTON</docAuthor>
  </byline>
  <docImprint>
    <name>LONDON</name>,
     Printed by <name>J.M.</name>
     for <name>John Starkey</name>
     at the <name>Mitre</name>
     in <name>Fleetstreet</name>,
     near <name>Temple-Bar.</name>
  </docImprint>
  <docDate>MDCLXXI</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart  type="main"> Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman
        Conquest;</titlePart>
    <titlePart  type="sub">with anecdotes of their courts.
    </titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <titlePart>Now first published from Official Records
     and other authentic documents private as well as
     public.</titlePart>
  <docEdition>New edition, with corrections and
     additions</docEdition>
  <byline>By <docAuthor>Agnes Strickland</docAuthor>
  </byline>
  <epigraph>
    <q>The treasures of antiquity laid up in old
        historic rolls, I opened.</q>
    <bibl>BEAUMONT</bibl>
  </epigraph>
  <docImprint>Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea</docImprint>
  <docDate>1860.</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

18.1.2 Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked as or elements; the following suggested values for the **type** attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

foreword a text addressed to the reader, by the author, editor or publisher, possibly in the form of a letter.

preface a text addressed to the reader, by the author, editor or publisher, possibly in the form of a letter.

dedication a text (often a letter) addressed to someone other than the reader in which the author typically commends the work in hand to the attention of the person concerned.

abstract a prose argument summarizing the content of the work.

ack Acknowledgements.

contents a table of contents (typically this should be tagged as a <list>).

frontispiece a pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Like any text division, those in front matter may contain low level structural or non-structural elements as described elsewhere. They will generally begin with a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the <head> element. Epistles will contain the following additional elements:

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

<argument> A formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Epistles which appear elsewhere in a text will, of course, contain these same elements.

As an example, the dedication at the start of Milton's *Comus* should be marked up as follows:

```
<div  type="dedication">
  <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount
        BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir apparent to the Earl of
     Bridgewater, &c.</head>
  <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
  <p>THis <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv'd its first occasion of
     Birth from your Self, and others of your Noble Family ....
     and as in this representation your attendant
  <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
    <signed>
      <name>H. LAWES.</name>
    </signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

18.2 Back Matter

18.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the <back> element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the **type** attribute:

appendix an appendix.

glossary a list of words and definitions, typically marked up as a <list type="gloss"> element .

notes a series of <note> elements.

bibliography a series of bibliographic references, typically in the form of a special bibliographic-list element <listBibl>, whose items are individual <bibl> elements.

index a set of index entries, possibly represented as a structured list or glossary list, with optional leading <head> and perhaps some paragraphs of introductory or closing text (An index may also be generated for a document by using the <index> element, described above in section «index»).

colophon a description at the back of the book describing where, when, and by whom it was printed; in modern books it also often gives production details and identifies the type faces used.

19 The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element <teiHeader> and has four major parts:

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts, which share many characteristics, may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the **type** attribute indicates the type of header. <teiHeader type="corpus"> introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more <p>s. Others are grouped:

- Elements whose names end in *Stmt*(for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
- Elements whose names end in *Decl* (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
- Elements whose names end in *Desc* (for description) contain a prose description.

19.1 The File Description

The <fileDesc> element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text as stored on some carrier medium, whether digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal header has the following structure:

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
<!-- ... -->
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
<!-- ... -->
    </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

19.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the <titleStmt>:

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.

It is recommended that the title should distinguish the computer file from the source text, for example:

```
[title of source]: a machine readable transcription
[title of source]: electronic edition
A machine readable version of: [title of source]
```

The <respStmt> element contains the following subcomponents:

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe: a machine readable
     transcription</title>
  <author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>James D. Benson</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

19.1.2 The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of a text (where *edition* is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition  n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised
  <date>1987</date>
  </edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

19.1.3 The Extent Statement

The <extent> statement describe the approximate size of a file.

Example:

```
<extent>4532 bytes</extent>
```

19.1.4 The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<distributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor.

At least one of these three elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

<idno> (identifying number) supplies any number or other identifier used to identify a bibliographic item in a standardized way.

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.

<date> contains a date in any format.

Example:

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
```

```
  <date>1989</date>
  <idno  type="ISBN"> 0-19-254705-5</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Copyright 1989, Oxford University
        Press</p>
  </availability>
</publicationStmt>
```

19.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The <seriesStmt> element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain <title>, <idno>, or <respStmt> elements.

The <notesStmt>, if used, contains one or more <note> elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

19.1.6 The Source Description

The <sourceDesc> is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton
    Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <author>CNN Network News</author>
    <title>News headlines</title>
    <date>12 Jun 1989</date>
  </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

19.2 The Encoding Description

The <encodingDesc> element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain elements from the following list:

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

19.2.1 Project and Sampling Descriptions

Examples of <projectDesc> and <samplingDesc>:

```
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont
        Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.
    </p>
  </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>
```

```
<encodingDesc>
  <samplingDecl>
    <p>Samples of 2000 words taken from the beginning
        of the text</p>
  </samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```

19.2.2 Editorial Declarations

The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph.

correction how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

normalization the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

quotation what has been done with quotation marks in the original -- have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

hyphenation what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original -- have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

segmentation how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

interpretation what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

```
<editorialDecl>
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout
     section 4 was added by hand and has not been
     checked.</p>
  <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the
     WordPerfect spelling checker.</p>
  <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling
     using Webster's 9th Collegiate dictionary.</p>
  <p>All quotation marks converted to entity
     references odq and cdq.</p>
</editorialDecl>
```

19.2.3 Reference and Classification Declarations

The <refsDecl> element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>The <att>n</att> attribute on each <gi>div</gi> contains the
     canonical reference for each such division in the form
     XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and
     yyy is the section number in arabic.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The <classDecl> element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes used by other parts of the header. At least one such scheme must be provided, encoded using the following elements:

<taxonomy> defines a typology used to classify texts either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy  xml:id="LC-SH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings
    </bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```
<taxonomy  xml:id="B">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category  xml:id="B.A">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category  xml:id="B.A1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category  xml:id="B.A2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category  xml:id="B.A3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category  xml:id="B.A4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category  xml:id="B.A5">
```

```
    <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
   </category>
   <category xml:id="B.A6">
    <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
   </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.D">
   <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
   <category xml:id="B.D1">
    <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
   </category>
   <category xml:id="B.D2">
    <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
   </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the <catRef> element within the <textClass> element, as further described below.

19.3 The Profile Description

The <profileDesc> element enables information characterizing various descriptive aspects of a text to be recorded within a single framework. It has three optional components:

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text.

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The <creation> element is useful for documenting where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there.

Example:

```
<creation>
  <date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
  <name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>
```

The <langUsage> element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain <language> elements to document each particular language used:

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

an example is needed.

The <textClass> element classifies a text by reference to the system or systems defined by the <classDecl> element, and contains one or more of the following elements:

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

<catRef/> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

The element <keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. The attribute **scheme** links these to the classification system defined in <taxonomy>.

```
<textClass>
  <keywords  scheme="LCSH">
    <list>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism --
            Data processing.</item>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism --
            Theory etc.</item>
      <item>English language -- Style -- Data
            processing.</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

19.4 The Revision Description

The <revisionDesc> element provides a change log in which each change made to a text may be recorded. The log may be recorded as a sequence of <change> elements each of which contains a brief description of the change. The attributes **date** and **who** may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the agency responsible for it.

Example:

```
<revisionDesc>
  <change  when="1991-03-06"  who="EMB">File format updated</change>
  <change  when="1990-05-25"  who="EMB">Stuart's corrections entered</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

20 List of Elements Described

The following list shows all the elements defined for the TEI Lite schema, with a brief description of each, and a link to its full specification in the Appendix.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

<argument> A formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor.

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

<biblScope> (scope of citation) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc.

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

<catRef/> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

<cell> contains one cell of a table.

<change> summarizes a particular change or correction made to a particular version of an electronic text which is shared between several researchers.

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text.

<date> contains a date in any format.

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

<distributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

** ** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

<editor> secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

<eg> (example) contains any kind of illustrative example.

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start of a section or chapter, or on a title page.

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text as stored on some carrier medium, whether digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration or figure.

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula.

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

<gi> (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

<**ident**> (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language.

<**idno**> (identifying number) supplies any number or other identifier used to identify a bibliographic item in a standardized way.

<**index**> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

<**interp**> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.

<**interpGrp**> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

<**item**> contains one component of a list.

<**keywords**> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

<**l**> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

<**label**> contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

<**language**> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

<**langUsage**> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

<**lb/**> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

<**lg**> (line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

<**list**> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

<**listBibl**> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

<**mentioned**> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

<**milestone/**> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

<**name**> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

<**note**> contains a note or annotation.

<**notesStmt**> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

<**num**> (number) contains a number, written in any form.

<**opener**> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

<**orig**> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

<**p**> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

<**pb/**> (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

<**principal**> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

<**profileDesc**> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

<**projectDesc**> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an

electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

<ptr/> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<q> (separated from the surrounding text with quotation marks) contains material which is marked as (ostensibly) being somehow different than the surrounding text, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

<row> contains one row of a table.

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the “chunk” level.

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

<sic> (latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

<sp> (speech) An individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

<speaker> A specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

<taxonomy> defines a typology used to classify texts either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element.

<teiHeader> (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

Appendixes

Substantive changes from the P4 version

This revision of the TEI Lite schema conforms to the TEI P5 Guidelines, which makes a number of changes from the TEI P4 Guidelines underlying earlier versions of TEI Lite. The following brief list indicates some of the major changes which will be needed in existing TEI P4-conformant documents before they can be used with the new schema. A fuller list is in preparation for publication as a part of TEI P5: the items listed here relate specifically to changes in TEI Lite only.

- At P5, a TEI document must declare a namespace of `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0`
- The attributes **id** and **lang** are replaced by the attributes **xml:id** and **xml:lang** respectively. Values for the latter attribute must conform to RFC 3066
- The element <choice> must be used to wrap <reg> and <orig> if both are supplied. Similarly for <sic> and <corr>, and for <abbr> and <expan>.
- "numbered divs" (<div1>, <div2>, etc.) are not supported in this version of TEI Lite
- all pointing and linking mechanisms now use the same W3C-defined mechanism: there is no longer any distinction between internal and external pointing elements
- the content model of <change> has changed significantly
- **hic desunt multa**

Formal specification

The TEI Lite is a pure subset of the TEI. All of the elements defined in it are taken from the following standard TEI modules:

tei, core, header, textstructure, figures, linking, analysis, and tagdocs.

The following elements from those modules are excluded from the schema: <ab>, <alt>, <altGrp>, <altIdent>, <analytic>, <attDef>, <attList>, <attRef>, <biblItem>, <biblStruct>, <binaryObject>, <broadcast>, <c>, <cb>, <cl>, <classSpec>, <classes>, <content>, <correction>, <datatype>, <defaultVal>, <desc>, <distinct>, <div1>, <div2>, <div3>, <div4>, <div5>, <div6>, <div7>, <egXML>, <elementSpec>, <equipment>, <equiv>, <exemplum>, <fsdDecl>, <floatingText>, <headItem>, <headLabel>, <hyphenation>, <imprimatur>, <interpretation>, <join>, <joinGrp>, <link>, <linkGrp>, <listRef>, <m>, <macroSpec>, <measure>, <meeting>, <memberOf>, <metDecl>, <metSym>, <moduleRef>, <moduleSpec>, <monogr>, <normalization>, <phr>, <postBox>, <postCode>, <quotation>, <recording>, <recordingStmt>, <remarks>, <schemaSpec>, <scriptStmt>, <segmentation>, <series>, , <spanGrp>, <specDesc>, <specGrp>, <specGrpRef>, <specList>, <state>, <stdVals>, <street>, <stringVal>, <tag>, <timeline>, <valDesc>, <valItem>, <valList>, <variantEncoding>, <w>, <when>

Here is the TEI Lite schema itself :

Macros

---

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials.

Module tei

Used by desc figDesc

Declaration

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

---

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements.

Module tei

Used by add cell corr del docEdition emph head hi l orig p ref reg seg sic title titlePart unclear

Declaration

```
macro.paraContent =
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )*
```

---

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements.

Module tei

Used by abbr addrLine author biblScope dateline distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor expan extent foreign geoDecl gloss label mentioned name num pubPlace publisher rs s salute signed soCalled speaker term trailer

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

---

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents.

Module tei

Used by authority classCode creation funder language principal resp sponsor

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

---

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements.

Module tei

Used by item note q quote said stage typeNote

Declaration

```
macro.specialPara =
   (
      text
   | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | model.inter
   | model.divPart    | model.global   )*
```

Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address.

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs] addrLine

---

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or e-mail address.

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members address

---

model.applicationLike groups elements used to record application-specific information about a document in its header.

Module header

Used by appInfo

Members application

---

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description.

Module tei

Used by cit listBibl relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomymodel.inter

Members bibl biblFull

---

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description.

Module tei

Used by bibl

Members model.imprintPart [biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor] edition extent idno relatedItem

---

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation.

Module tei

Used by choice

Members abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear

---

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements.

Module tei

Used by argument body div epigraph postscript

Members model.divPart [model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] lg sp] model.inter [model.biblLike [bibl biblFull] model.egLike [eg] model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listBibl] model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said] model.stageLike [stage] table]

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

---

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions.

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members date time

---

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division.

Module tei

Used by body div group lg list

Members model.divBottomPart [closer postscript signed trailer] model.divWrapper [argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph]

---

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division.

Module tei

Used by back frontmodel.divBottom

Members closer postscript signed trailer

---

model.divGenLike groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

Module tei

Used by body div

Members divGen

---

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body div front

Members div

---

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions.

Module tei

Used by macro.specialParamodel.common

Members model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division.

Module tei

Used by body div group lg list

Members model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] opener salute] model.divWrapper [argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph]

---

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division.

Module tei

Used by model.divTop

Members model.headLike [head] opener salute

---

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division.

Module tei

Used by model.divTop model.divBottom

Members argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph

---

model.egLike groups elements containing examples or illustrations.

Module tei

Used by figuremodel.inter

Members eg

---

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed.

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

Members code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title

---

model.encodingPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module header

Used by encodingDesc

Members appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl

---

model.entryPart.top groups high level elements within a structured dictionary entry

Module tei

Used by —

Members cit

Note Members of this class typically contain related parts of a dictionary entry which form a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

---

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter.

Module tei

Used by back front

Members divGen titlePage

---

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text.

Module tei

Used by address argument back bibl body byline change cit closer date div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure front group lg list opener postscript sp table text time titlePagemacro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara

Members model.global.edit [gap] model.global.meta [index interp interpGrp] model.milestoneLike [anchor lb milestone pb] model.noteLike [note] figure

---

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function.

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members gap

---

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements.

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members index interp interpGrp

Note Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

---

model.glossLike groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

Module tei
Used by category gap interp interpGrp taxonomy
Members desc gloss

---

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects.
Module tei
Used by figure formulamodel.phrase
Members formula graphic

---

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.
Module tei
Used by argument divGen figure listBibl tablemodel.divTopPart
Members head

---

model.headerPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI Header.
Module header
Used by teiHeader
Members encodingDesc profileDesc

---

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed.
Module tei
Used by model.highlighted
Members hi

---

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct.
Module tei
Used by biblmodel.phrase
Members model.emphLike [code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi]

---

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints.
Module tei
Used by model.biblPart
Members biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

---

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by changemacro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialParamodel.common

Members model.biblLike [bibl biblFull] model.egLike [eg] model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listBibl] model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said] model.stageLike [stage] table

---

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module tei

Used by lg spmodel.divPart

Members l

---

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module tei

Used by applicationmodel.inter

Members desc label

---

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources.

Module tei

Used by catDesc changemacro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

Members model.emphLike [code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [measureGrp num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs]] model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] model.phrase.xml [att gi val] model.ptrLike [ptr ref]

---

model.listLike groups list-like elements.

Module tei

Used by sourceDescmodel.inter

Members list listBibl

---

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning.

Module tei

Used by measureGrpmodel.pPart.data

Members measureGrp num

---

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems.

Module tei

Used by listBiblmodel.global

Members anchor lb milestone pb

---

model.msItemPart groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

Module tei

Used by —

Members model.msQuoteLike [title] model.quoteLike [cit quote] model.respLike [author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor] bibl listBibl

---

model.msQuoteLike groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

Module tei

Used by model.msItemPart

Members title

---

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

Used by model.addrPart model.pPart.data

Members model.nameLike.agent [name] rs

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies.

Module tei

Used by respStmtmodel.nameLike

Members name

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements.

Module tei

Used by notesStmtmodel.global

Members note

---

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by application availability cRefPattern editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc figure projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc spmodel.divPart

Members p

---

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter.

Module tei

Used by back front

Members argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart

---

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data.

Module tei

Used by biblmodel.phrase model.limitedPhrase

Members model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [measureGrp num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs]

---

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription.

Module tei

Used by biblmodel.phrase

Members model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [add corr del orig reg sic unclear]

---

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring.

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.edit model.limitedPhrase

Members abbr choice expan

---

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials.

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.edit

Members add corr del orig reg sic unclear

---

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person.

Module tei

Used by —

Members bibl

---

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases.

Module tei

Used by byline closer date docImprint opener timemacro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara

Members model.graphicLike [formula graphic] model.highlighted [model.emphLike [code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi]] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [measureGrp num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs]] model.pPart.edit [model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [add corr del orig reg sic unclear]] model.phrase.xml [att gi val] model.ptrLike [ptr ref] model.segLike [pc s seg]

Note This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class *inter* or *chunk*. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

---

model.phrase.xml groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values

Module tei

Used by model.phrase model.limitedPhrase

Members att gi val

---

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module header

Used by profileDesc

Members langUsage textClass

---

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference.

Module tei

Used by application bibl cit relatedItemmodel.phrase model.limitedPhrase

Members ptr ref

---

model.publicationStmtPart groups elements which may appear within the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI Header.

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members address authority availability date distributor idno pubPlace publisher

---

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements.

Module tei

Used by cit spmodel.inter

Members model.quoteLike [cit quote] q said

---

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module tei

Used by model.qLike model.msItemPart

Members cit quote

---

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module tei

Used by titleStmtmodel.biblPart model.msItemPart

Members author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor

---

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module tei

Used by biblmodel.phrase

Members pc s seg

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

---

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts.

Module tei

Used by spmodel.inter

Members stage

Note Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>.

Module tei

Used by titlePage

Members byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic titlePart

Attribute classes

---

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual.

Module tei

Members change q said sp

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@who` indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

---

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module tei

Members att.naming [name pubPlace rs] author docAuthor docTitle resp term title

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@key` provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status Optional

Datatype `string`

Values any string of Unicode characters

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

`@ref` (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

---

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

Module tei

Members application date time

Attributes att.datable.w3c (*@period*, *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)

Note This "superclass" provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso class. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

---

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Members att.datable [application date time]

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.*

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<date
   when="1945-10-24"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">24 Oct 45</date>
<date
   when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25
in the morning</date>
<time
   when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8
pm</time>
<time
   when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date
   when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date
   when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date
   when="---01">the first of the month</date>
<date
```

```
   when="--08">August</date>
<date
   when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date
   when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date
   when="-0056">56 BC</date>
```

```
This list begins in
the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the
Sunday after
Pentecost, in that year the <date
   calendar="Julian"
   when="1632-06-06"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">27th of May (old
style)</date>.
```

```
<opener
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <dateline>
    <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
    <date
       when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>To
     Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time
      when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

Note The value of the **when** attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the **when** attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value **0000** to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value **-0001** should be used.

`@notBefore` specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional
Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional
Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional
Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

---

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose **decls** attribute.

Module tei

Members availability bibl biblFull editorialDecl geoDecl langUsage listBibl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl sourceDesc textClass

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.
Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Legal values are: **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default]

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter «CCAS». Only one element of a particular type may have a **default** attribute with a value of **true**.

---

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element.

Module tei

Members back body div front gloss graphic group lg p ptr ref term text

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@decls` identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.
Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values must identify a set of declarable elements of different types.

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter «CCAS».

---

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members att.editLike [att.transcriptional [add del] corr date expan gap reg time unclear]

Attributes att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)

`@unit` names the unit used for the measurement
Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **cm** (centimetres)

mm (millimetres)

in (inches)

lines lines of text

chars (characters) characters of text

`@quantity` specifies the length in the units specified
Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

`@extent` indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.
Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }`
separated by whitespace

Values any measurement phrase, e.g. *25 letters*, *2 × 3 inches*.

```
<gap
   extent="5 words"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<height
   extent="half the page"/>
```

@precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.
Status Optional
Datatype `"high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
Status Optional
Datatype `xsd:Name`
Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.
most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.
range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

---

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions.

Module tei

Members div lg

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.
Status Optional
Legal values are: **composite** composite content: i.e. no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.
uniform uniform content: i.e. the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence. [Default]

@sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.
Status Optional
Legal values are: **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.
medial division lacks material at start and end.
final division lacks material at start.
unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.
complete division is not a sample. [Default]

@part specifies whether or not the division is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas.
Status Mandatory when applicable

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the division is incomplete in some respect

N (no) either the division is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness. [Default]

I (initial) the initial part of an incomplete division

M (medial) a medial part of an incomplete division

F (final) the final part of an incomplete division

Note The values **I**, **M**, or **F** should be used only where it is clear how the division is to be reconstituted.

---

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of a encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional [add del] corr date expan gap reg time unclear

Attributes att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*))

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype `"high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A pointer to an element in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

external there is external evidence to support the intervention.

conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@source contains a list of one or more pointers indicating the sources which support the given reading.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the **xml:id** attribute on a <witness> or <msDesc> element elsewhere in the document.

Note The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

Module tei

Members

Attributes att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*) att.global.analytic (*@ana*)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:ID`

Values any valid XML identifier.

Note The **xml:id** attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section «CORS».

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Values any string of characters; often, but not necessarily, numeric.

Note The **n** attribute may be used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a "tag" generated according to BCP 47

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:language`

Values The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with `x-` or contains `-x-`) it should, and if not it may, match the value of an **ident** attribute of a <language> element supplied in the TEI Header of the current document.

Note If no value is specified for **xml:lang**, the **xml:lang** value for the immediately enclosing element is inherited; for this reason, a value should always be specified on the outermost element (<TEI>).

@rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Values any string of characters; if the typographic rendition of a text is to be systematically recorded, a systematic set of values for the **rend** attribute should be defined.

```
<head
   rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
```

```
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
<lb/>On Her <lb/>
  <hi
     rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the **rend** attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines.

@xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values any syntactically valid URI reference.

```
<div
   type="bibl"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl
     xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
    <bibl
       n="1">
      <author>
        <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
      </author>
      <ref
         target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
        <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl
       n="2">
      <author>
        <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
      </author>
      <ref
         target="NortMIrene.sgm">
        <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl
       n="3">
      <author>
        <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
      </author>
      <ref
         target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
        <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
  </listBibl>
</div>
```

---

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text.

Module analysis

Members att.global

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the **ana** attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more valid identifiers of one or more interpretive elements (usually <fs> or <interp>), separated by white space.

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

---

att.global.linking defines a set of attributes for hypertext and other linking, which are enabled for all elements when the additional tag set for linking is selected.

Module linking

Members att.global

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

@synch (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

@sameAs points to an element that is the same as the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a URI.

@copyOf points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a URI.

Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a URI.

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
Status Optional
Datatype xsd:anyURI
Values a URI.

@exclude points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.
Status Optional
Datatype 1– occurrences of xsd:anyURI separated by whitespace
Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

@select selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.
Status Optional
Datatype 1– occurrences of xsd:anyURI separated by whitespace
Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.
Note This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

---

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written.

Module tei
Members typeNote
Attributes In addition to global attributes

@scribe gives a standard name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.
Status Optional
Datatype xsd:Name
Values Un nom quelconque.

@script characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc.
Status Optional
Datatype 1– occurrences of xsd:Name separated by whitespace

@medium describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil*
Status Optional
Datatype xsd:Name

@scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.
Status Optional
Legal values are: **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript
major this hand is used through most of the manuscript
minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module tei

Members graphic

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Values The value should be a valid MIME media type

Note This attribute class provides attributes for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, according to standard taxonomies. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions Media Type system. This system of typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

att.interpLike provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation.

Module tei

Members interp interpGrp

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@resp (responsible party) indicates who is responsible for the interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values A pointer to an element indicating the person responsible for the interpretation, typically to a <respStmt> in the <teiHeader>.

@type indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

Status Recommended

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **image** identifies an image in the passage.

character identifies a character associated with the passage.

theme identifies a theme in the passage.

allusion identifies an allusion to another text.

@inst (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values One or more valid identifiers, separated by whitespace.

Note The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

att.measurement provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

Module tei

Members measureGrp

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@unit indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **m** (metre) SI base unit of length

kg (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

s (second) SI base unit of time

Hz (hertz) SI unit of frequency

Pa (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress

Ω (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

L (litre) 1 dm^3

t (tonne) 10^3 kg

ha (hectare) 1 hm^2

Å (ångström) 10^{-1} m

mL (millilitre)

cm (centimetre)

dB (decibel) see remarks, below

kbit (kilobit) 10^3 or 1000 bits

Kibit (kibibit) 2^1 or 1024 bits

kB (kilobyte) 10^3 or 1000 bytes

KiB (kibibyte) 2^1 or 1024 bytes

MB (megabyte) 10 or 1 000 000 bytes

MiB (mebibyte) 2^2 or 1 048 576 bytes

Note If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit **count** should be used, or the **unit** attribute may be left unspecified.Wherever appropriate, a recognised SI unit name should be used (see further `http://www.bipm.org/en/si/`; `http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/`). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

@quantity specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@commodity indicates the substance that is being measured

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Note In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the

plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

Note This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

```
<!-- regularization:--><l
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">So weren't you gonna buy
<measure quantity="0.5" unit="gal" commodity="ice cream">half a
gallon</measure>, baby</l>
<!-- normalization: -->
<l>So won't you go and buy
<measure quantity="1.893" unit="L" commodity="ice cream">half a
gallon</measure>,
baby?</l>
```

Note The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further `http://www.bipm.org/en/si/`; `http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/`). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as **lines** or **characters**.

---

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc.

Module tei

Members name pubPlace rs

Attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values any valid URI

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

---

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

Module tei

Members add figure note

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@place *Status* Recommended

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **below** below the line

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

top at the top of the page

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add
   place="margin"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">[An addition
written in the margin]</add>
<add
   place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note
   place="bottom"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

---

att.pointing defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references.

Module linking

Members ptr ref

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@type` categorizes the pointer in some respect, using any convenient set of categories.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values The type should indicate the intended function of the pointer, or the rhetorical relationship between its source and target.

`@evaluate` specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

Module tei

Members att.dimensions [att.editLike [att.transcriptional [add del] corr date expan gap reg time unclear]] num

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@min where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@max where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

---

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module tei

Members pc s seg

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@function characterizes the function of the segment.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values For a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate.

@part specifies whether or not the segment is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a clause which is divided between two or more sentences.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the segment is incomplete in some respect

N (no) either the segment is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]

I (initial) the initial part of an incomplete segment

M (medial) a medial part of an incomplete segment

F (final) the final part of an incomplete segment

Note The values **I**, **M**, or **F** should be used only where it is clear how the division is to be reconstituted.

---

att.sourced provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members lb milestone pb refState

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@ed` (edition) supplies an arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

Example

```
<l
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Of Mans First
Disobedience,<lb  ed="1674"/> and<lb  ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb  ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb  ed="1667"/> and all<lb  ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

---

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it.

Module tei

Members index

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@spanTo` indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values points to an element following this one in the current document.

Note The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element (if any) to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element.

---

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.

Module tei

Members cell row

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@role` indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values. [Default]

Note When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the **role** attribute of the parent <row> element.

@rows indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell (or row) spans several rows.

Note Where several cells span several rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns.

Note Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

---

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.

Module tei

Members add del

Attributes att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)))

@hand signifies the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values must refer to a <handNote> element, typically declared in the document header (see section «PHDH»).

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Sample values include: **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty. [Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

`@seq` (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

---

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module tei

Members desc gloss

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@version` specifies the version name or number of the source from which the translated version was derived

Status Optional

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Note The version may be a number, a letter, or a date

---

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

Module tei

Members add anchor application bibl cit corr date del div gloss head ident lb lg listBibl measureGrp milestone name pb pc quote reg relatedItem s seg term text time

Attributes In addition to global attributes

`@type` characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

`@subtype` provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Note The **subtype** attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element, additional to that provided by its **type** attribute.

Note The typology used may be formally defined using the <classification> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header, or as a list within one of the components of the <encodingDesc> element, or informally as descriptive prose within the <encodingDesc> element.

---

att.xmlspace groups TEI elements for which it is reasonable to specify whitespace management using the W3C-defined xml:space attribute.

Module tei

Members eg

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@xml:space signals an intention that white space should be preserved by applications

Status Optional

Legal values are: **default**

preserve

Note The XML specification should be consulted for guidance on the use of this attribute.

Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@version The version of the TEI scheme

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:decimal`

Values A number identifying the version of the TEI guidelines

Used by teiCorpus

May contain

header: teiHeader

textstructure: text

Declaration

```
element TEI
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute version { xsd:decimal }?,
   ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )
}
```

<s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

<s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Example

```
<TEI
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

Note This element is required.

<abbr>

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

`@type` allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **suspension** the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

contraction the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

superscription the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

acronym the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

title the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)

organization the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

geographic the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

Note The **type** attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and

should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see «PETTY»

Used by model.pPart.editorial model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element abbr
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<abbr
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">SPQR</abbr>
```

Example

```
<choice
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Note The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.transcriptional (*@hand*, *@status*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)))) att.placement (*@place*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element add
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
The story I am going to relate is true as to
its main facts, and as to the consequences <add  place="above"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">of
these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.
```

Note The <add> element should not be used for additions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element should be used.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Module core

Used by model.addrPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<address
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an

<address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

Module core

Used by model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: addrLine gap index lb milestone name note pb rs

figures: figure

linking: anchor

Declaration

```
element address
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<address
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name  n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

Module linking

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }
```

Example

```
<s
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The anchor is
he<anchor  xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr  target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

Note On this element, the global **xml:id** attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

<appInfo> (application information) records information about an application which has edited the TEI file.

Module header

Used by model.encodingPart

May contain

header: application

Declaration

```
element appInfo { att.global.attributes, model.applicationLike+ }
```

Example

```
<appInfo
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <application  version="1.24"  ident="Xaira">
    <label>XAIRA Indexer</label>
    <ptr  target="#P1"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

<application> provides information about an application which has acted upon the document.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (*@period*, *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*))

@ident Supplies an identifier for the application, independent of its version number or display name.

Status **Required**

Datatype xsd:Name

@version Supplies a version number for the application, independent of its identifier or display name.

Status **Required**

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

Used by model.applicationLike

May contain

core: desc label p ptr ref

Declaration

```
element application
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   attribute ident { xsd:Name },
   attribute version
   {
      token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
   },
   ( model.labelLike+, ( model.ptrLike* | model.pLike* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<appInfo
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <application version="1.5" ident="ImageMarkupTool1" notAfter="2006-06-
01">
    <label>Image Markup Tool</label>
    <ptr target="#P1"/>
    <ptr target="#P2"/>
  </application>
</appInfo>
```

This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr> elements.

<argument>

A formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

Module textstructure

Used by openermodel.divWrapper model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

Declaration

```
element argument
{
```

```
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<argument
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>Monte Video — Maldonado — Excursion
    to R Polanco — Lazo and Bolas — Partridges —
    Absence of Trees — Deer — Capybara, or River Hog —
    Tucutuco — Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits — Tyrant
    Flycatcher — Mocking-bird — Carrion Hawks —
    Tubes formed by Lightning — House struck</p>
</argument>
```

Note Often contains either a list or a paragraph

<att>

(attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.

Module tagdocs

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

`@scheme` supplies an identifier for the scheme in which this name is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **TEI** (text encoding initiative) this attribute is part of the TEI scheme. [Default]

DBK (docbook) this attribute is part of the Docbook scheme.

XX (unknown) this attribute is part of an unknown scheme.

Used by model.phrase.xml

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element att { att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { xsd:Name }?, text }
```

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The TEI defines six
<soCalled>global</soCalled> attributes; their names are
<att>xml:id</att>, <att>rend</att>, <att>xml:lang</att>, <att>n</att>,
<att>xml:space</att>,
and <att>xml:base</att>; <att  scheme="XX">style</att> is not among
them.</p>
```

Note A namespace prefix may be used in order to specify the scheme as an alternative to specifying it via the scheme attribute: it takes precedence

---

<author>

in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Used by model.respLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element author
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<author
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">British Broadcasting
Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
<persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName  key="BBC">British Broadcasting
     Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
```

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes **key** or **ref** may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

<authority>

(release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor.

Module header

Used by model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<authority
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">John Smith</authority>
```

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

@status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **free** the text is freely available.

unknown the status of the text is unknown. [Default]

restricted the text is not freely available.

Used by model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element availability
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
   model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<availability  status="restricted"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability  status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability  status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*)

Used by text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: divGen gap head index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Declaration

```
element back
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            (
               ( model.div1Like ),
               ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
            )
          | (
               ( model.divLike ),
               ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
            )
         )?
      ),
      ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
   )
}
```

Example

```
<back
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <div1  type="appendix">
    <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
    <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
  </div1>
  <div1  type="epistle">
    <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
    <salute>Sir.</salute>
    <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please </p>
  </div1>
  <div1  type="advert">
    <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
        Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
    <list>
      <item  n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
      <item  n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
```

```
     <item  n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the
Writers of all Nations,
           10 Vol, Pr.  bound 1l.</item>
   </list>
  </div1>
  <div1  type="advert">
   <head>
    <hi  rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J.
NEWBERY, at the
       Bible and Sun in St.  Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
   <list>
    <item  n="1">Dr.  James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c.
           2s.  6d</item>
    <item  n="2">Dr.  Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
   </list>
  </div1>
</back>
```

Note The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

<bibl>

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.biblLike model.msItemPart model.personPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address author biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure

header: distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code ident

Declaration

```
element bibl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      text
   | model.gLike    | model.highlighted
   | model.pPart.data    | model.pPart.edit    | model.segLike    | model.ptrLike    | mo
}
```

Example

```
<bibl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Blain, Clements and Grundy:
Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale,
1990)</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <title  level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
<publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>
```

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

---

<biblFull>

(fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by model.biblLike

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element biblFull
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   (
      (
         titleStmt,
         editionStmt?,
         extent?,
         publicationStmt,
         seriesStmt?,
         notesStmt?
      ),
      sourceDesc*
   )
}
```

Example

```
<biblFull
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers
from the middle ages
        to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
```

```
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>
```

<biblScope>

<biblScope> (scope of citation) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@type identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. **columns**, **pages**, **volume**.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

pp (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

ll (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.

chap (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the **type** attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the **type** attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Used by model.imprintPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element biblScope
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
   }?,
   attribute from { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } }?,
   attribute to { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<biblScope
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope  type="pp"  from="12"  to="34"/>
<biblScope  type="vol">II</biblScope>
<biblScope  type="pp">12</biblScope>
```

<body>

(text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*)

Used by text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element body
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
      ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
      (
         ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global
      | model.divGenLike )* )+
```

```
       | (
            ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
            (
               ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            | ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global
            | model.divGenLike )* )+
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
   )
}
```

Example

```
<body
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
  <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
  <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
  <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
  <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
  <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
  <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
  <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
  <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
  <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

<byline>

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

Module textstructure

Used by openermodel.divWrapper model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: docAuthor

Declaration

```
element byline
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}
```

Example

```
<byline
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Written by a CITIZEN who
continued all the
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Written from her own
MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">By George Jones, Political
Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Somtimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

<cRefPattern>

(canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI.

Module header

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of **cRef** attributes can be matched.

Status **Required**

Datatype token

Values must be a regular expression according to the W3C XML Schema Language

Note Parenthesised groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the **replacementPattern** attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a "replacement pattern" which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, provides a URI.

Status **Required**

Datatype text

Values Should be the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI, with references to groups in the **matchPattern**.

Note The strings "$1" through "$9" are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by **matchPattern**

(counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression.If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as %24.

Used by refsDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element cRefPattern
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute matchPattern { token },
   attribute replacementPattern { text },
   model.pLike*
}
```

Example

```
<cRefPattern
   matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z]+)\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
   replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='$2']/div[@t
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
```

Note The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of **xml:base** in force at the place where the **cRef** attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

<catDesc>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc.

Module header

Used by category

May contain

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gloss measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element catDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart )*
}
```

Example

```
<catDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Prose reportage</catDesc>
```

Example

```
<catDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

<catRef/> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

Module header

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

`@target` identifies the categories concerned

Status **Required**

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A series of one or more space-separated pointers (URIs) to <category> elements, typically located within a <taxonomy> element inside a TEI header.

`@scheme` identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values May supply the identifier of the associated <taxonomy> element.

Used by textClass

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element catRef
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } },
   attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
   empty
}
```

Example

```
<catRef target="#news #prov #sales2"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="news">
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
```

```
  </category>
  <category  xml:id="prov">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category  xml:id="sales2">
    <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Note The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared

---

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

Module header

Used by category taxonomy

May contain

core: desc gloss

header: catDesc category

Declaration

```
element category
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( catDesc | model.glossLike* ), category* )
}
```

Example

```
<category  xml:id="b1"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category  xml:id="b2"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
  <category  xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category  xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

<cell> contains one cell of a table.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes att.tableDecoration (*@role*, *@rows*, *@cols*)

Used by row

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element cell
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.tableDecoration.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<row
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <cell  role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell  role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
     and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

<change> summarizes a particular change or correction made to a particular version of an electronic text which is shared between several researchers.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.ascribed (*@who*)

@when supplies the date of the change in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values a date, time, or date & time in any of the formats defined in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*

Used by revisionDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gap gloss index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element change
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   attribute when
   {
      xsd:date
    | xsd:gYear
    | xsd:gMonth
    | xsd:gDay
    | xsd:gYearMonth
    | xsd:gMonthDay
    | xsd:time
    | xsd:dateTime
   }?,
   ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter | model.global )*
}
```

Example

```
<titleStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor  xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
  <respStmt  xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc>
  <change  who="#BZ"  when="2008-02-02">Finished chapter 23</change>
  <change  who="#BZ"  when="2008-01-02">Finished chapter 2</change>
  <change  n="P2.2"  when="1991-12-21"  who="#LDB">Added examples to section
3</change>
  <change  when="1991-11-11"  who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Note The **who** attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first.

<choice>

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

Module core

Used by choicemodel.pPart.editorial

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

linking: seg

Declaration

```
element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )* }
```

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Lastly, That, upon his solemn
oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
   <sic>1724</sic>
   <corr>1728</corr>
  </choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
   <orig>favour</orig>
   <reg>favor</reg>
  </choice>.</p>
```

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.For a specialized version of <choice> for encoding multiple witnesses of a single work, see section «TCAPLL».

<cit>

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.quoteLike model.entryPart.top

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit gap index lb milestone note pb ptr q quote ref said

figures: figure

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

Declaration

```
element cit
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
     model.qLike    | model.biblLike    | model.ptrLike
     | model.global    | model.entryPart   )+
}
```

Example

```
<cit
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <form>
   <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit  type="translation"  xml:lang="en">
   <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit  type="example">
   <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
   <cit  type="translation"  xml:lang="en">
    <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
   </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

<classCode>

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

Module header

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@scheme identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

Status **Required**

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values may point to a local definition, for example in a <taxonomy> element, or more usually to some external location where the scheme is fully defined.

Used by textClass

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element classCode
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI },
   macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">410</classCode>
```

<classDecl>

(classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

Module header

Used by model.encodingPart

May contain

header: taxonomy

Declaration

```
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

Example

```
<classDecl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
   <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <list>
      <item>Political science</item>
      <item>United States -- Politics and government —
            Revolution, 1775-1783</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

<closer>

groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Module textstructure

Used by model.divBottomPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: dateline salute signed

Declaration

```
element closer
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
   | model.gLike    | signed    | dateline
   | salute    | model.phrase    | model.global   )*
}
```

Example

```
<div  type="letter"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c.  &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

Example

```
<div  type="chapter"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>
<!-- ....  --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name  type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914–1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

Module tagdocs

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

`@lang` (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed

Status Optional

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Used by model.emphLike

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element code
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute lang { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } }?,
   text
}
```

Example

```
<code  lang="JAVA"
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new
Size();
fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element corr
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know,
Juan.  It's so far in the past now – how <corr
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan.  It's so far in the past now –
how <choice
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
```

```
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text.

Module header

Used by profileDesc

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element creation { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<creation
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

Example

```
<creation
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <date  when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

Note Character data and phrase-level elements.The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest; it should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

<date> contains a date in any format.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.datable (att.datable.w3c (*@period*, *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **Gregorian** Gregorian calendar

Julian Julian calendar
Islamic Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar
Hebrew Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar
Revolutionary French Revolutionary calendar
Iranian Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar
Coptic Coptic or Alexandrian calendar
Chinese Chinese lunisolar calendar

```
He was born on <date
   calendar="Gregorian"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Feb. 22,
1732</date>
(<date
   calendar="Julian"
   when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).
```

Used by model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element date
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute calendar
   {
      "Gregorian"
    | "Julian"
    | "Islamic"
    | "Hebrew"
    | "Revolutionary"
    | "Iranian"
    | "Coptic"
    | "Chinese"
    | xsd:Name
   }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

Example

```
<date  when="1980-02"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">early February 1980</date>
```

Example

```
Given on the <date  when="1977-06-12"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven
of the Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

Example

```
<date  when="1990-09"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">September 1990</date>
```

<dateline>

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

Module textstructure

Used by closer openermodel.divWrapper

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element dateline { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<dateline
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Walden, this 29.  of August
1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div  type="chapter"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name  type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914–1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.transcriptional (*@hand*, *@status*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element del
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<l
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <del  rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
<del  rend="overstrike"  type="primary">schwebt</del>
weht der Wind
</l>
```

Note Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see «CE»).This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. Illegible text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. See further sections «PHOM» and, for the close association of the <del> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements (the latter three tags available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources), «PHCOMB».The <del> tag should not

be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

<desc>

<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.translatable (*@version*)

Used by model.glossLike model.labelLike

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss label list listBibl measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element desc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.translatable.attributes,
   macro.limitedContent}
```

Example

```
<desc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">contains a brief description of
the purpose and application for an element, attribute,
attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>
```

Note TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb.

<distributor>

<distributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

Module header

Used by model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element distributor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<distributor
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Oxford Text
Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

(text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.divLike (*@org*, *@sample*, *@part*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Used by model.divLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element div
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.divLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
          | (
               ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
               ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
            )
         ),
         ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
```

Example

```
<body
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <div  type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,
to repress all
```

```
        exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div  n="1"  type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
greatest
           happiness of the greatest number....</p>
      <div  n="1.1"  type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
        <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence
to be attached to
              authority ... </p>
      </div>
      <div  n="1.2"  type="section">
        <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
        <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when...
</p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</body>
```

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

`@type` specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

toc a table of contents

figlist a list of figures

tablist a list of tables

Note Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

Used by model.frontPart model.divGenLike

May contain

core: head

Declaration

```
element divGen
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
   model.headLike*
}
```

Example One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the **indexName**

attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```
<back
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <div1  type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
    <listBibl>
      <bibl/>
    </listBibl>
  </div1>
  <div1  type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen  n="Index Nominum"  type="NAMES"/>
    <divGen  n="Index Rerum"  type="THINGS"/>
  </div1>
</back>
```

Example Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->
  <divGen  type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p> ... </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Note This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

<docAuthor>

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Used by bylinemodel.titlepagePart model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element docAuthor
{
   att.global.attributes,
```

```
   att.canonical.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<titlePage
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <docTitle>
   <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
       Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Note The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not.

<docDate>

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@when gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values a date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*

Note For simple dates, the **when** attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in the form (YYYY-MM-DD) specified by *XML Schema Part 2*.

Used by docImprintmodel.titlepagePart model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element docDate
{
```

```
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute when
   {
      xsd:date
    | xsd:gYear
    | xsd:gMonth
    | xsd:gDay
    | xsd:gYearMonth
    | xsd:gMonthDay
    | xsd:time
    | xsd:dateTime
   }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<docImprint
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Oxford, Clarendon Press,
<docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

<docEdition>

(document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

Module textstructure

Used by model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<docEdition
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The Third edition
Corrected</docEdition>
```

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

<docImprint>

(document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

Module textstructure

Used by model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: docDate

Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
   | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | pubPlace
   | docDate    | publisher    | model.global   )*
}
```

Example

```
<docImprint
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Oxford, Clarendon Press,
1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

<docTitle>

(document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Used by model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: titlePart

Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<docTitle
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <titlePart  type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart  type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

<edition>

(edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

Module header

Used by editionStmtmodel.biblPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<edition
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">First edition <date>Oct
1990</date>
</edition>
<edition  n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

<editionStmt>

(edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

Module header

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: p respStmt

header: edition

Declaration

```
element editionStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, respStmt* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<editionStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <edition  n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

Example

```
<editionStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
  </p>
</editionStmt>
```

<editor>

<editor> secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@role specifies the nature of the intellectual responsibility

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Values semi-open list (examples might include: translator, editor, compiler, illustrator, etc.)

Used by model.respLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element editor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute role { xsd:Name }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<editor
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor  role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted.Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

<editorialDecl>

(editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by model.encodingPart

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | model.editorialDeclPart+ )
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <normalization>
   <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
       Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
   </p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation  marks="all"  form="std">
   <p>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing
       quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

<eg>

(example) contains any kind of illustrative example.

Module tagdocs

In addition to global attributes att.xmlspace (*@xml:space*)

Used by model.egLike

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element eg { att.global.attributes, att.xmlspace.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The
<gi>term</gi> element is declared using the following syntax:
<eg><![CDATA[<!ELEMENT term (%phrase.content;)>]]</eg>
</p>
```

Note If the example contains material in XML markup, either it must be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters. If the example contains well-formed XML, it should be marked using the more specific <egXML> element.

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

Module core

Used by model.emphLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
You took the car and did <emph
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">what</emph>?!!
```

Example

```
<q
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">What it all comes to is
this,</q> he said.
<q>
  <emph>What
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>
</q>
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

Module header

Used by model.headerPart

May contain

core: p

header: appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl

Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( model.encodingPart | model.pLike )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<encodingDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
    formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start of a section or chapter, or on a title page.

Module textstructure

Used by openermodel.divWrapper model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc gap index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

Declaration

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

Example

```
<epigraph  xml:lang="la"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l  part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
```

```
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)))

Used by model.pPart.editorial model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element expan
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<expan  xml:lang="la"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>
```

Note The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text as stored on some carrier medium, whether digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

Module header

Used by biblFull fileDescmodel.biblPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<extent
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

<figDesc>

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Module figures

Used by figure

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss label list listBibl measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Example

```
<figure
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <graphic  url="emblem1.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration or figure.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes att.placement (*@place*)

Used by model.global

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap graphic head index lb milestone note p pb

figures: figDesc figure formula

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

Declaration

```
element figure
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   (
     model.headLike    | model.pLike    | figDesc
     | model.graphicLike    | model.egLike    | model.global   )*
}
```

Example

```
<figure
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic  url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"  scale="0.5"/>
</figure>
```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

Module header

Used by teiHeader

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         titleStmt,
         editionStmt?,
         extent?,
         publicationStmt,
         seriesStmt?,
```

```
         notesStmt?
      ),
      sourceDesc+
   )
}
```

Example

```
<fileDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<foreign>

(foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

Module core

Used by model.emphLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
This is
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign  xml:lang="la"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">lapis
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

Note The global **xml:lang** attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language

tag as defined in «CHSH».This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global **xml:lang** attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@notation supplies the name of a previously defined notation used for the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values The name of a formal notation previously declared in the document type declaration.

Used by model.graphicLike

May contain

core: graphic

figures: formula

Declaration

```
element formula
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute notation { xsd:anyURI }?,
   ( text | model.graphicLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<formula notation="TeX"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">$e=mc^2$</formula>
```

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*)

Used by text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: divGen gap head index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Declaration

```
element front
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            (
               ( model.div1Like ),
               ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
            )
          | (
               ( model.divLike ),
               ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
            )
         )?
      ),
      ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
   )
}
```

Example

```
<front
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
        vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
    <q  xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat
        illa: <q  xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>
    </quote>
  </epigraph>
  <div  type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q  xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
    </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
<front
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <div  type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div  type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
        author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
        she has done so inadvertently.
        ...</p>
  </div>
</front>
```

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

Module header

Used by model.respLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element funder { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<funder
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The National Endowment for the
Humanities, an independent federal agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of
Canada</funder>
```

Note Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors*, who provide intellectual support and authority.

<gap>

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)))

@reason gives the reason for omission. Sample values include **sampling**, **inaudible**, **irrelevant**, **cancelled**.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Values any short indication of the reason for the omission.

@hand in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, signifies the hand which made the deletion.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section «PHDH»).

@agent In the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Used by model.global.edit

May contain

core: desc gloss

Declaration

```
element gap
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason
   {
      list { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }+ }
   }?,
   attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
   attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
   model.glossLike*
}
```

Example

```
<gap extent="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
```

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section «PHCOMB» for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<geoDecl>

(geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the <geo> element elsewhere within the document.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

@datum supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **WGS84** (World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. [Default]

MGRS (Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on

OSGB36 (ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.

ED50 (European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system.

Used by model.encodingPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element geoDecl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" | xsd:Name }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<geoDecl  datum="OSGB36"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
```

<gi>

(element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.

Module tagdocs

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@scheme supplies the name of the scheme in which this name is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **TEI** (text encoding initiative) this element is part of the TEI scheme. [Default]

DBK (docbook) this element is part of the Docbook scheme.

XX (unknown) this element is part of an unknown scheme.

Schematron

HTML

Used by model.phrase.xml

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element gi { att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { xsd:Name }?, text }
```

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">The <gi>xhtml:li</gi> element is
roughly analogous to the <gi>item</gi> element, as is the
<gi  scheme="DBK">listItem</gi> element.</p>
```

This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the schema attribute as alternative ways of indicating that the gi in question is not a TEI element name: in practice only one method should be adopted.

<gloss>

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*) att.translatable (*@version*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@target identifies the associated <term> element by an absolute or relative URI reference

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a <term> element

@cRef (canonical reference) identifies the associated <term> element using a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section «SACR») should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a <term> element

Note The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the **decls** attribute.

Used by model.emphLike model.glossLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element gloss
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.translatable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( attribute target { xsd:anyURI }? | attribute cRef { xsd:anyURI }? ),
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
We may define <term  xml:id="tdpv"  rend="sc"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">discoursal point of view</term>
as
<gloss  target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed
through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
addresser, and the
fiction.</gloss>
```

Note The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

<graphic/>

<graphic/> indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.internetMedia (*@mimeType*) att.declaring (*@decls*)

@width The display width of the image

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

```
token
{
   pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
}
```

@height The display height of the image

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

```
token
{
   pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
}
```

@scale A scale factor to be applied to the image to make it the desired display size

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@url (uniform resource locator) A URL which refers to the image itself.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Used by model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element graphic
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.internetMedia.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   attribute width
   {
      token
      {
         pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
```

```
      }
   }?,
   attribute height
   {
      token
      {
         pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
      }
   }?,
   attribute scale
   {
      xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
   }?,
   attribute url { xsd:anyURI }?,
   empty
}
```

Example

```
<figure
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <graphic  url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One:  The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note The **mimeType** attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the **url** attribute.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*)

Used by group text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap head index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener postscript salute signed text trailer

Declaration

```
element group
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
      model.divBottom*
```

```
   )
}
```

Example

```
<egXML
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"><text
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
   <front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
   </front>
   <group>
     <text>
<!-- first poem -->
     </text>
     <text>
<!-- second poem -->
     </text>
   </group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->
</egXML>
```

<head>

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.headLike model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element head { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1  n="I"  type="book"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
```

```
     Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <list>
    <head>Chapter-Headings</head>
  </list>
  <div2  type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
        years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
        years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

Example The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list  type="simple"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item>
<!-- ... -->
  </item>
</list>
```

Note The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

<hi>

(highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

Module core

Used by model.hiLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<hi  rend="gothic"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">And this Indenture further
witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi  rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

<ident>

(identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language.

Module tagdocs

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.emphLike

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element ident { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<ident  type="namespace"
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">http://www.tei-
c.org/ns/Examples</ident>
```

Note In running prose, this element may be used for any kind of identifier in any formal language.

<idno>

(identifying number) supplies any number or other identifier used to identify a bibliographic item in a standardized way.

Module header

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

`@type` categorizes the number, for example as an ISBN or other standard series.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values A name or abbreviation indicating what type of identifying number is given (e.g. ISBN, LCCN).

Used by seriesStmtmodel.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element idno { att.global.attributes, attribute type { xsd:Name }?, text }
```

Example

```
<idno type="ISSN"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">doi:10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URL">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
```

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.spanning (*@spanTo*)

@indexName supplies a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Values an application-specific name, consisting of Unicode characters only.

Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Used by indexmodel.global.meta

May contain

core: index term

Declaration

```
element index
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   attribute indexName { xsd:Name }?,
   ( term, index? )*
}
```

Example

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura
<index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
```

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.

Module analysis

In addition to global attributes att.interpLike (*@resp*, *@type*, *@inst*)

Used by interpGrpmodel.global.meta

May contain

core: desc gloss

Declaration

```
element interp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.interpLike.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.glossLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<interp  type="structuralunit"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">aftermath</interp>
```

<interpGrp>

<interpGrp> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

Module analysis

In addition to global attributes att.interpLike (*@resp*, *@type*, *@inst*)

Used by model.global.meta

May contain

analysis: interp

core: desc gloss

Declaration

```
element interpGrp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.interpLike.attributes,
   ( model.glossLike*, interp+ )
}
```

Example

```
<interpGrp  resp="#TMA"  type="structuralunit"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <desc>basic structural organization</desc>
  <interp  xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
  <interp  xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
  <interp  xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
  <interp  xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
  <interp  xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
  <interp  xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
<bibl  xml:id="TMA">
<!-- bibliographic citation for source of this interpretive framework -->
</bibl>
```

Note Any number of <interp> elements.

<item>

<item> contains one component of a list.

Module core

Used by list

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element item { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

Example

```
<list  type="ordered"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item  n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item  n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
  <item  n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item  n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item  n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item  n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global **n** attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the **n** attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not **n**.

<keywords>

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined.

Status **Required**

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values Usually this will indicate an external website or other location where the scheme is documented.

Used by textClass

May contain

core: list term

Declaration

```
element keywords
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI },
   ( term+ | list )
}
```

Example

```
<keywords  scheme="http://classificationweb.net"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <list>
    <item>Babbage, Charles</item>
    <item>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</item>
  </list>
</keywords>
```

<l>

(verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@part specifies whether or not the line is metrically complete.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the line is metrically incomplete

N (no) either the line is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]

I (initial) the initial part of an incomplete line

M (medial) a medial part of an incomplete line

F (final) the final part of an incomplete line

Note The values **I**, **M**, or **F** should be used only where it is clear how the line is to be reconstituted.

Used by model.lLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element l
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute part { "Y" | "N" | "I" | "M" | "F" }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<l  met="-/-/-/-/-/"  part="Y"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
```

<label> contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

Module core

Used by listmodel.labelLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element label { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example Labels are most commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global **xml:lang** attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list  type="gloss"  xml:lang="enm"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head  xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel  xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem  xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
     <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
     <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
    </cit>
  </item>
  <label>verteth</label>
  <item  xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label>murie</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
```

```
  <label>swik</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <label>naver</label>
  <item  xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the **n** attribute on the <item> element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list  rend="runon"  type="ordered"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
    printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list  type="gloss"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <quote  xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit
amor, et nos cedamus
       amori.</quote>
  </item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

<langUsage>

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by model.profileDescPart

May contain

header: language

Declaration

```
element langUsage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
```

```
   language+
}
```

Example

```
<langUsage
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@ident (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global **xml:lang** attribute.

Status **Required**

Datatype `xsd:language`

@usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" }
```

Values a whole number between 0 and 100

Used by langUsage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element language
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute ident { xsd:language },
   attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?,
   macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<langUsage xml:lang="en-US"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic
```

```
script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

Note Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

<lb/> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.sourced (*@ed*)

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element lb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.sourced.attributes,
   empty
}
```

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Of Mans First
Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The **n** attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The **type** attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect, but its most common use is to specify that the presence of the line break does not imply the end of the word in which it is embedded. The value **nobreak** is recommended for this purpose, but encoders are free to choose whichever values are appropriate.

<lg> (line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.divLike (*@org*, *@sample*, *@part*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Used by lg spmodel.divPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap head index l lb lg milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element lg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.divLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      ( model.lLike | lg ),
      ( model.lLike | lg | model.global )*,
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
   )
}
```

Example

```
<lg  type="free"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg  type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg  type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it.  And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

<list>

(list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@type describes the form of the list.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **ordered** list items are numbered or lettered.

bulleted list items are marked with a bullet or other typographic device.

simple list items are not numbered or bulleted. [Default]

gloss each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

Note The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged **<list type="gloss">**; this is however a semantic error.

Used by keywords revisionDescmodel.listLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap head index item label lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
element list
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { "ordered" | "bulleted" | "simple" | "gloss" | xsd:Name }?,
   (
      ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
      (
         ( item, model.global* )+
       | ( ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+ )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
   )
}
```

Example

```
<list  type="ordered"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with <list  type="bullets">
     <item>rings on his fingers</item>
     <item>bells on his toes</item>
   </list>
  </item>
</list>
```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1  type="section"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list  type="ordered">
    <item  n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared
who is caught with
        the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over
        eightpence. <list  type="ordered">
       <item  n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the
thief with his
              wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on
that account – or to
              clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
```

```
       <item  n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself
or to escape, he is
               not to be spared [whether younger or older than
twelve].</item>
       <item  n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison
40 days, and he may
               then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to
stand surety for him
               that he will desist for ever.</item>
       <item  n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
               or to bring him back there.</item>
       <item  n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
               whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
               supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a
fine.</item>
     </list>
   </item>
   <item  n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
        no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
        person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list  type="ordered">
       <item  n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
that appointed day,
               he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters
him is to strike him
               down as a thief.</item>
       <item  n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
               or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
     </list>
   </item>
   <item  n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
        his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and
        120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
        often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
        refused him justice. <list  type="ordered">
       <item  n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
slave, and it becomes
               known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
               occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay
all that he owns.</item>
       <item  n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
               an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to
liable to the same.</item>
     </list>
   </item>
   <item  n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
        a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot
deny it or is
```

```
        afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">These decrees, most blessed Pope
Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross. <list  type="simple">
   <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
        subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
        Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
        the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with thef sign of
        the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
   <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
   <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the
sign of the Holy
        Cross.</item>
  </list>
</p>
```

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by listBiblmodel.listLike model.msItemPart

May contain

core: bibl head lb listBibl milestone pb

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

Declaration

```
element listBibl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( model.headLike*, ( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike | listBibl )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<listBibl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

<measureGrp> (measure group) contains a group of dimensional specifications which relate to the same object, for example the height and width of a manuscript page.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.measurement (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@commodity*)
att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.measureLike

May contain

core: measureGrp num

Declaration

```
element measureGrp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.measurement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.measureLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<measureGrp  type="leaves"  unit="mm"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <height  scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width  quantity="105"/>
```

```
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="ruledArea" unit="mm">
  <height scope="most" quantity="90"/>
  <width scope="most" quantity="48"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="box" unit="in">
  <height quantity="12"/>
  <width quantity="10"/>
  <depth quantity="6"/>
</measureGrp>
```

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

Module core

Used by model.emphLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element mentioned { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
There is thus a
striking accentual difference between a verbal form like
<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second
syllable of the
word, and its participial derivative
<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.
```

<milestone/> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.sourced (*@ed*)

@unit provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Status **Required**

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the <pb> element).

column column breaks.

line line breaks (synonymous with the <lb> element).

book any units termed book, liber, etc.

poem individual poems in a collection.

canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

speaker changes of speaker or narrator.

stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

act acts within a play.

scene scenes within a play or act.

section sections of any kind.

absent passages not present in the reference edition.

unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

Note If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of **unit**. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered.In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element milestone
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.sourced.attributes,
   attribute unit
   {
      "page"
    | "column"
    | "line"
    | "book"
    | "poem"
    | "canto"
    | "speaker"
    | "stanza"
    | "act"
    | "scene"
    | "section"
    | "absent"
    | "unnumbered"
    | xsd:Name
   },
   empty
}
```

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note For this element, the global **n** attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.naming (*@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.nameLike.agent

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element name
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<name type="person"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>
```

Note Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.placement (*@place*)

@type describes the type of note.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values Values can be taken from any convenient typology of annotation suitable to the work in hand; e.g. annotation, gloss, citation, digression, preliminary, temporary

Note For specialized types of editorial annotation (e.g. for marking corrections, normalizations, cruxes, etc.), see chapter «TC».

@resp (responsible party) indicates who is responsible for the annotation: author, editor, translator, etc.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a pointer to one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, encoding, or annotation

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. “page 218, lines 3–4”). The **anchored** attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value **true** indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value **false** indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the **n** attribute.

@target indicates the point (or points) of attachment for a note, or the beginning of the span to which the note is attached.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values reference to the **xml:id**s of element(s) which begin at the location in question (e.g. the **xml:id** of an <anchor> element).

Values Référence à le(s) **xml:id**s de(s) élément(s) qui commence(nt) à l'endroit en question (par exemple, l'**xml:id** d'un élément<anchor>).

Note If **target** and **targetEnd** are to be used to indicate where notes attach to the text, then elements at the appropriate locations (<anchor> elements if necessary) must be given **xml:id** values to be pointed at.

@targetEnd points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values reference to the **xml:id**(s) of element(s) which *end* at the location(s) in question, or to an empty element at the point in question.

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in «SATSRN».

Used by model.noteLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element note
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
   attribute resp { xsd:anyURI }?,
   attribute anchored { xsd:boolean }?,
   attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?,
   attribute targetEnd { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

```
And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly <note  place="foot"  type="gloss"  resp="#MDMH"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <term  xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI Header:

```
<respStmt  xml:id="MDMH"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

Example The global **n** attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note  n="126"  anchored="true"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,
a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

Module header

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: note

Declaration

```
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, model.noteLike+ }
```

Example

```
<notesStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)

@type indicates the type of numeric value.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st

fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric.

Used by model.measureLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element num
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ranging.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" | xsd:Name
   }?,
   attribute value
   {
      xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
   }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">I reached
<num  type="cardinal"  value="21">twenty-one</num> on my
<num  type="ordinal"  value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday... light
travels at <num  value="10E10">10<hi  rend="sup">10</hi>
  </num> cm per second.</p>
```

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter «FS». The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

<opener>

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

Module textstructure

Used by model.divTopPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

Declaration

```
element opener
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
   | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | argument
   | byline    | dateline    | epigraph    | salute    | signed    | model.global   )*
}
```

Example

```
<opener
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <dateline>Walden, this 29.  of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

Example

```
<opener
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <dateline>
    <name  type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have
prevented me from
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

Module core

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element orig { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```
<l
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">But this will be a
<orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```
<l
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">But this will be a <choice>
    <orig>meere</orig>
    <reg>mere</reg>
  </choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
    <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
    <reg>understood</reg>
  </choice>
</l>
```

<p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*)

Used by model.pLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element p
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Hallgerd was outside. <q>There
is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you
    done?</q>
</p>
<p>
  <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
```

```
Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
me.</q>
</p>
```

<pb/>

(page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.sourced (*@ed*)

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element pb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.sourced.attributes,
   empty
}
```

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> ... <pb  n="145"  ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb  n="283"  ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the **facs** attribute

```
<TEI
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
<!--...-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <pb  n="1"  facs="page1.png"/>
<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is
encoded here -->
    <pb  n="2"  facs="page2.png"/>
<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
  </text>
</TEI>
```

Note By convention, <pb> elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer. The global **n** attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb>

element itself. The **type** attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

<pc>

(punctuation character) a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

Module analysis

In addition to global attributes att.segLike (*@function*, *@part*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

`@force` indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator

inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

`@unit` provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

`@pre` indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Used by model.segLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element pc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
   attribute unit { xsd:Name }?,
   attribute pre { xsd:boolean }?,
   ( text | model.gLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<phr
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
  <pc  type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

Note .

<postscript>

contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter.

Module textstructure

Used by model.divBottomPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc gap index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

Declaration

```
element postscript
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( model.common ) | ( model.global ) )*
}
```

Example

```
<div  type="letter"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date  when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
     logs.  I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
     the task.  I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
     axe.  Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occured on <date  when="2001-07-06">06 Jul
01</date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>
```

<principal>

(principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

Module header

Used by model.respLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element principal { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<principal
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Gary Taylor</principal>
```

<profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

Module header

Used by model.headerPart

May contain

header: creation langUsage textClass

Declaration

```
element profileDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( creation?, model.profileDescPart* )
}
```

Example

```
<profileDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by model.encodingPart

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element projectDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<projectDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June
1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

<ptr/> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.pointing (*@type*, *@evaluate*) att.declaring (*@decls*)

@target specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying one or more URI References

Status **Required**

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status **Required**

Datatype 1– occurrences of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Values the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section «SACR») should be a valid URI reference to the intended target

Note The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the **decls** attribute.Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element.

Used by model.ptrLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element ptr
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }
    | attribute cRef
      {
         list { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }+ }
      }
   ),
   empty
}
```

<s:report test="@target and @cRef">the target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.</s:report>

Example

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
```

Note The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

<pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.naming (*@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

Used by docImprint model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element pubPlace
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

Module header

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: address date p pubPlace publisher

header: authority availability distributor idno

Declaration

```
element publicationStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date  when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date  when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Note Although not enforced by the schemas, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

---

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

Module core

Used by docImprintmodel.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<imprint
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

---

<q> (separated from the surrounding text with quotation marks) contains material which is marked as (ostensibly) being somehow different than the surrounding text, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.ascribed (*@who*)

@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **spoken** representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written quotation from a written source

soCalled authorial distance

foreign (foreign words)

distinct (linguistically distinct)

term (technical term)

emph (rhetorically emphasized)

mentioned refering to itself, not its normal referant

Used by model.qLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measureGrp mentioned

milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element q
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
    | xsd:Name
   }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
It is spelled <q
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Tübingen</q> – to enter the
letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press
<q>0 0 f c</q>
```

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text by quotation marks for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of **rend** that indicates the use of quotation marks.

<quote>

(quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.quoteLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element quote
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
Lexicography has
shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth,
probably
best summarized in his slogan, <quote
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">You shall know a word by the
company it keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

<ref>

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.pointing (*@type*, *@evaluate*) att.declaring (*@decls*)

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the reference by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Values the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section «SACR») should be a valid URI reference to the intended target

Note The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the **decls** attribute.Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ref> element.

Used by model.ptrLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element ref
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI+ } }?
    | attribute cRef
      {
         list { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }+ }
      }?
   ),
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<ref
   target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> See especially the second
sentence</ref> See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.>
```

Note The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

<refState/>

(reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.sourced (*@ed*)

@unit indicates what kind of state is changing at this milestone.

Status **Required**

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **page** page breaks in the reference edition.

column column breaks.

line line breaks.

book any units termed book, liber, etc.

poem individual poems in a collection.

canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

act acts within a play.

scene scenes within a play or act.

section sections of any kind.

absent passages not present in the reference edition.

`@length` specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values Should be a positive integer; if no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

Note When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side. When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly.

`@delim` (delimiter) supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

Values If a single space is used it is interpreted as whitespace.

Used by refsDecl

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element refState
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sourced.attributes,
   attribute unit
   {
      "page"
    | "column"
    | "line"
    | "book"
    | "poem"
    | "canto"
    | "stanza"
    | "act"
    | "scene"
    | "section"
    | "absent"
    | xsd:Name
   },
   attribute length { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
   attribute delim { text }?,
   empty
}
```

Example

```
<refState unit="book" delim=":"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<refState unit="line" length="4"/>
```

<refsDecl>

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by model.encodingPart

May contain

core: p

header: cRefPattern refState

Declaration

```
element refsDecl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}
```

Example

```
<refsDecl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <cRefPattern
     matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
     replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

```
<refsDecl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
  <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
     element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
     number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
     followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
     level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element reg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Please <reg>knock</reg> if an
<reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Please <choice>
    <reg  resp="#LB">knock</reg>
    <orig>cnk</orig>
  </choice> if an <choice>
    <reg>answer</reg>
    <orig>nsr</orig>
  </choice> is <choice>
    <reg>required</reg>
    <orig>reqd</orig>
  </choice>
</q>
```

<relatedItem>

contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.biblPart

May contain

core: bibl ptr ref

header: biblFull

Declaration

```
element relatedItem
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title  type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
    </imprint>
    <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</title>
  </series>
  <relatedItem  type="original">
    <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
        <author>Shirley, James</author>
        <title  type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
        <title  type="subordinate">a tragi-comedie presented at the private
house in Salisbury
                Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
        <imprint>
          <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
          <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
          <date>1655</date>
        </imprint>
        <extent>78 p.</extent>
      </monogr>
    </biblStruct>
  </relatedItem>
</biblStruct>
```

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Used by respStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element resp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<respStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <resp  key="com">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

Note The attributes **key** or **ref**, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalised form, by referring directly (using **ref**) or indirectly (using **key**) to a standardised list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at `http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html` for bibliographic usage.

<respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.

Module core

Used by editionStmt seriesStmtmodel.respLike

May contain

core: name resp

Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) )
}
```

Example

```
<respStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```
<respStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <resp>converted to SGML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

<revisionDesc>

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

Module header

Used by teiHeader

May contain

core: list

header: change

Declaration

```
element revisionDesc { att.global.attributes, ( list | change+ ) }
```

Example

```
<revisionDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <change  when="1991-11-11"> EMB deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Note Record changes with most recent changes at the top of the list.

<row> contains one row of a table.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes att.tableDecoration (*@role*, *@rows*, *@cols*)

Used by table

May contain

figures: cell

Declaration

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

Example

```
<row  role="data"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <cell  role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.naming (*@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

@type indicates more specifically the object referred to by the referencing string.
Values might include **person**, **place**, **ship**, **element** etc.
Status Mandatory when applicable
Datatype `xsd:Name`
Values Any string of characters.

Used by model.nameLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element rs
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<q
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">My dear <rs  type="person">Mr.
Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs  type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs  type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>
```

<s>

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

Module analysis

In addition to global attributes att.segLike (*@function*, *@part*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.segLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element s
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<head
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

Note The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead. The **type** attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

<said> (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.ascribed (*@who*)

@aloud may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having been vocalized or signed.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype `xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"`

Note The value **true** indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value **false** indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed.

@direct may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype `xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"`

Note The value **true** indicates the speech or thought is represented directly; the value **false** that speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect.

Used by model.qLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element said
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   attribute aloud { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" }?,
   attribute direct { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <said>Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle
him with jewels and
    gold</said>, a troublemaker simpered. <said>He'll trample on the Duke's
camellias, spill
```

```
    his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in
the end the Duke
    will say, <said>Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of
Rags and Tags, O
       rider of the sun!</said>
  </said>
</p>
```

Example

```
<p
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <said aloud="true" rend="pre(“) post(”)">Hmmm</said>, said a small voice
in his ear. <said aloud="true" rend="pre(“) post(”)">Difficult. Very
difficult. Plenty of courage, I see.
    Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes — and a nice
thirst to prove
    yourself, now that's interesting. … So where shall I put you?</said>
</p>
<p>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought,
<said aloud="false" rend="italic">Not
    Slytherin, not Slytherin</said>.</p>
```

<salute>

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

Module textstructure

Used by closer openermodel.divTopPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element salute { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<salute
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">To all courteous mindes, that
will voutchsafe the readinge.</salute>
```

<samplingDecl>

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by model.encodingPart

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element samplingDecl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<samplingDecl
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle,
or end of each
     text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

Note This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

<seg>

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the "chunk" level.

Module linking

In addition to global attributes att.segLike (*@function*, *@part*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.segLike model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element seg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<seg
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <seg  rend="caps"  type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg>
glory was the ballfield.

</s>
```

Example

```
<seg  type="preamble"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <seg>Sigmund,
  <seg  type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>,
     was a king in Frankish country.</seg>
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>
</seg>
```

Note The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element — i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

<seriesStmt>

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

Module header

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: p respStmt title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element seriesStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( idno | respStmt )* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<seriesStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <idno  type="vol">1.2</idno>
```

```
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

<sic>

(latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

Module core

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element sic { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <sic
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">we can</sic> prove or disprove
anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <choice
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <sic>a Table</sic>
```

```
    <corr>a' babbld</corr>
  </choice> of green fields.
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

Module textstructure

Used by closer openermodel.divBottomPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<signed
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Thine to command <name>Humph.
Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

Module core

Used by model.emphLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
To edge his way along
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance,
was what the
knowing ones call <soCalled
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.
```

<sourceDesc>

(source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: bibl list listBibl p

header: biblFull

Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   (
      model.pLike+
   | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart
   | model.listLike )+
   )
}
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <bibl>
    <title  level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

<sp>

(speech) An individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.ascribed (*@who*)

Used by model.divPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: cit gap index l lb lg milestone note p pb q quote said speaker stage

figures: figure

linking: anchor

Declaration

```
element sp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( speaker, model.global* )?,
      (
         ( model.lLike | lg | model.pLike | model.stageLike | model.qLike ),
         model.global*
      )+
   )
}
```

Example

```
<sp
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
first place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
for the present I
    will forbear...</p>
</sp>
```

Note The **who** attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Note Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements.The **who** attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

<speaker>

A specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

Module core

Used by sp

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<sp  who="#ni #rsa"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage  type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list  type="speakers">
  <item  xml:id="ni"/>
  <item  xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

Module header

Used by model.respLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element sponsor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<sponsor
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Association for Computers and
the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

Note Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders*, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

<stage>

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.

exit describes an exit.

business describes stage business.

novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

delivery describes how a character speaks.

modifier gives some detail about a character.

location describes a location.

mixed more than one of the above

Used by model.stageLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element stage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "setting"
    | "entrance"
    | "exit"
    | "business"
    | "novelistic"
    | "delivery"
    | "modifier"
    | "location"
    | "mixed"
    | xsd:Name
   }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<stage type="setting"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
```

```
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@rows indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Note Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Note Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Used by model.inter

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap head index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure row

linking: anchor

Declaration

```
element table
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute rows { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
   attribute cols { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
   ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*, ( row, model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<table rows="4" cols="4"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
```

```
      <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
    </row>
    <row role="data">
      <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
      <cell role="data">5</cell>
      <cell role="data">8</cell>
      <cell role="data">128</cell>
    </row>
    <row role="data">
      <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
      <cell role="data">3</cell>
      <cell role="data">6</cell>
      <cell role="data">36</cell>
    </row>
    <row role="data">
      <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
      <cell role="data">3</cell>
      <cell role="data">5</cell>
      <cell role="data">20</cell>
    </row>
    <row role="data">
      <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
      <cell role="data">1</cell>
      <cell role="data">11</cell>
      <cell role="data">22</cell>
    </row>
  </table>
```

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.Any rendition information should be supplied using the global **rend** attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

<taxonomy>

<taxonomy> defines a typology used to classify texts either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

Module header

Used by classDecl

May contain

core: bibl desc gloss

header: biblFull category

Declaration

```
element taxonomy
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.glossLike* | category+ | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
```

```
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
        <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
        <catDesc>National</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
        <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
        <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
        <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
      </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d">
      <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
        <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
        <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
      </category>
    </category>
  </taxonomy>
```

<teiCorpus> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@version The version of the TEI scheme

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:decimal

Values A number identifying the version of the TEI guidelines

Used by teiCorpus

May contain

core: teiCorpus

header: teiHeader

textstructure: TEI

Declaration

```
element teiCorpus
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute version { xsd:decimal }?,
   ( teiHeader, ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<teiCorpus
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
<!-- header for corpus -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
<!-- header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
<!-- content of first text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
<!-- header for second text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
<!-- content of second text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
<!-- more TEI elements here -->
</teiCorpus>
```

Note Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.This element is mandatory when applicable.

<teiHeader> (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

`@type` specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **text** the header is attached to a single text. [Default]

corpus the header is attached to a corpus.

Used by TEI teiCorpus

May contain

`header`: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
   ( fileDesc, model.headerPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

Example

```
<teiHeader
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
        <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
      </respStmt>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
        <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
      </respStmt>
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
      <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
      <address>
        <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
      </address>
      <idno  type="OTA">119</idno>
      <availability>
        <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
      </availability>
      <date  when="1968">1968</date>
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
      <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The
Norton Facsimile,
           1968)</bibl>
    </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
  <encodingDesc>
    <projectDesc>
      <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of
old-spelling
           concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and
revised for use during the
           editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor,
1989).</p>
    </projectDesc>
    <editorialDecl>
      <correction>
        <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
      </correction>
      <normalization>
        <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s
and ligatured
              forms are not encoded.</p>
      </normalization>
    </editorialDecl>
    <refsDecl  xml:id="ASLREF">
      <cRefPattern
         matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.*)"
         replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
        <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse
order as that
             listed here: <list>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
          </item>
          <item>a period</item>
```

```
            <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
            </item>
            <item>a space</item>
            <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
            </item>
          </list>
        </p>
      </cRefPattern>
    </refsDecl>
  </encodingDesc>
  <revisionDesc>
    <list>
      <item>
        <date  when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
      <item>
        <date  when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>
  </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

@sortKey supplies the sort key for this term in an index.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Values any string of Unicode characters.

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah
ha-Kohen <index
   indexName="NAMES"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <term
     sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.
Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was
David's own first
cousin.
```

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index; if this attribute is not supplied, the textual content of the element is used for this purpose.

@target identifies the associated <gloss> element by an absolute or relative URI reference

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a <gloss> element

@cRef identifies the associated <gloss> element using a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header
Status Optional
Datatype xsd:anyURI
Values the result of applying the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section «SACR») should be a valid URI reference that resolves to a <gloss> element
Values Le résultat de l'application de l'algorithme pour la résolution de références canoniques (décrites dans la section «SACR») devrait être une référence à un URI valide réductible à un élément élément<gloss>
Note The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the **decls** attribute.

Used by index keywordsmodel.emphLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element term
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   attribute sortKey { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } }?,
   ( attribute target { xsd:anyURI }? | attribute cRef { xsd:anyURI }? ),
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
A computational device that infers structure
from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">parser</term>, and much of the
history
of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.
```

Example

```
We may define <term  xml:id="TDPV"  rend="sc"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">discoursal point of view</term>
as
<gloss  target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed
through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
addresser, and the
fiction.</gloss>
```

Note This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word

lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the **ref** attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the **key** attribute). Because the mutually exclusive **target** and **cRef** attributes overlap with the function of the **ref** attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

<text>

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.declaring (*@decls*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by TEI group

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: back body front group

Declaration

```
element text
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( front, model.global* )?,
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( back, model.global* )?
   )
}
```

Example

```
<text
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text>
      <front/>
      <body/>
      <back/>
    </text>
    <text/>
  </group>
</text>
```

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

<textClass>

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by model.profileDescPart

May contain

header: catRef classCode keywords

Declaration

```
element textClass
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   ( classCode | catRef | keywords )*
}
```

Example

```
<taxonomy
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <category xml:id="acprose">
    <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
  </category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <catRef target="#acprose"/>
  <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
    <list>
      <item>End of the world</item>
      <item>History - philosophy</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.datable (att.datable.w3c (*@period*, *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Used by model.dateLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element time
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

Example

```
As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck — <time  when="11:45:00"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">the quarter to twelve</time>.
```

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Recommended when applicable

Legal values are: **a** (analytic) analytic title (article, poem, or other item published as part of a larger item)

m (monographic) monographic title (book, collection, or other item published as a distinct item, including single volumes of multi-volume works)

j (journal) journal title

s (series) series title

u (unpublished) title of unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is

ipso facto of level "a", and one appearing within a <series> element of level "s". For this reason, the **level** attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Sample values include: **main** main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

Used by seriesStmt titleStmtmodel.emphLike model.msQuoteLike

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element title
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
   attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<title
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Information Technology and the
Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Hardy's Tess of the
D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
  <title type="subtitle">an international journal for
    epistemology, methodology and history of
    science</title>
</title>
```

Note The attributes **key** and **ref**, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

<titlePage>

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Values Any string, e.g. *full*, *half*, *Series*, etc.

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the"main" title page of a work.

Used by model.frontPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap graphic index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph titlePart

Declaration

```
element titlePage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( model.titlepagePart ),
      ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
   )
}
```

Example

```
<titlePage
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart  type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart  type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the
West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name  type="place">London</name> for
<name>T.P.</name>
    <date>1612.</date>
  </docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@type specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **main** main title of the work [Default]

sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work

alt (alternate) alternative title of the work

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Used by docTitlemodel.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element titlePart
{
   att.global.attributes,
```

```
   attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<docTitle
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <titlePart  type="main">THE FORTUNES
     AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
     Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart  type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
     And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
     Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
     Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
     once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
     Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
     at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
  <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

<titleStmt>

(title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.

Module header

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor respStmt title

header: funder principal sponsor

Declaration

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

Example

```
<titleStmt
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

<trailer>

contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Module textstructure

Used by model.divBottomPart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
element trailer { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<trailer
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

<typeNote>

<typeNote> describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.handFeatures (*@scribe*, *@script*, *@medium*, *@scope*)

Used by —

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element typeNote
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.handFeatures.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<typeNote  scope="sole"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface
showing strong Italianate influence.
</typeNote>
```

<unclear>

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.editLike (*@cert*, *@resp*, *@evidence*, *@source*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*)))

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Values one or more words describing the difficulty, e.g. *faded*, *background noise*, *passing truck*, *illegible*, *eccentric ductus*.

```
<div
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear
       reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
  </p>
</div>
```

@hand Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section «PHDH»).

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element unclear
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason
   {
```

```
      list { token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }+ }
   }?,
   attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
   attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter «CE».The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section «PHCOMB» for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<val>

(value) contains a single attribute value.

Module tagdocs

Used by model.phrase.xml

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element val { att.global.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<val
   xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"
   xmlns:tei="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">unknown</val>
```